IMT Nuremberg Archives

H – 1224

International Court of Justice

H1224 - 0002

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT No. 2108-PS
(pp. 22, 23, 24)
OFFICE OF US CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Preussische Gesetzsammlung
(Prussian Law Collection)
1936 Edition

Issue No. 5 distributed in Berlin, 12 Feb 1936.

No. 14309

Decree
for execution of the Law on the Secret State Police of the 10 February 1936 (Prussian Legal Gazette, page 21)
Of the 10 February 1936.

On the basis of Articles 1 and 8 of the Law on the Secret State Police of the 10 February 1936 (Prussian Legal Gazette, page 21) is decreed:

Art. 1

The Gestapo is authorized to carry out the police investigations in high treason, treason and explosive cases, as well as, others punishable aggressive actions against Party and State.

Art. 2

(1) In the proper competence of the Secret State Police the Secret State Police Bureau is authorized to undertake measures in the entire territory of Prussia and measures effective for the entire territory.

(2) The Secret State Police Bureau assumes the competence of the Supreme Federal State Authorities in cases of the Law on guns and munitions of the 13 July 1928 (Reichs Legal Gazette I, page 198).

(3) The Secret State Police Bureau is a central collecting agency for political police information.

(4) The Secret State Police Bureau administers the state concentration camps.

(5) In Berlin the Secret State Police Bureau assumes the competence of the Secret State Police for the Federal-State-County and local police affairs. Whether and to what extent these tasks will be transferred to the State Police office in Berlin - will be determined by the Chief of the Secret State Police.

Art. 3

The State Police offices may within the framework of the competence of the Secret State Police take all measures encumbent upon the Secret State Police with exception of the prohibition of periodicals in their district.

Art. 4

(1) Insofar as it is necessary for the detection and fighting of aspirations which are directed against the State, the authorities of the county and local police in towns of more than 5000 inhabitants may decree the confiscation of printed material and restrictions regarding the rights of association and assembly for the support of the Secret State Police. The county and local police authorities have to obey within this realm the instructions of the responsible office of the State Police.

(2) The State Police office at its location executes also the functions of the local police within the framework of responsibility of the Secret State Police.

H1224 - 0003

Art. 5

The Secret State Police is an independent branch of the interior administration. Its officials, employees and paid personnel belong to the interior administration. Its highest superior is the Chief of the Secret State Police.

Art. 6

The head of the Secret State Police office will represent the Deputy Chief of the Secret State Police in all official business functions.

Art. 7

The Secret State Police office may within the framework of responsibility resting upon the Secret State Police make requests to the OBER - and REGIERUNGSPRAESIDENTEN (heads of provincial and county governments), as well as to all police agencies. The heads of the provincial and county governments have to obey the instructions of the Secret State Police office with respect to affairs concerning the Secret State Police.

Art. 8

(1) The State Police offices are located at the seat of the government. The Chief of the Secret State Police can, in agreement with the Minister of Interior, make exceptions from this principle.

(2) An index of the State Police offices is added in the appendix.

Art. 9

(1) The heads of the State Police offices and political specialists (Sachbearbeiter) of the provincial governors will be determined by the Chief of the Secret State Police in agreement with the Minister of the Interior.

(2) In case the head of the State Police Office is prevented from doing so, the functions of the political specialist of the provincial governor will be taken care of by the official who is destined as permanent deputy of the head of the State Police Office. He will be designated by the Chief of the Secret State Police in agreement with the Minister of Interior.

Art. 10

The State Police offices may make their request to all police authorities of their district. In counties, the request has as a matter of principle to be directed to the County Governor (Landrat); in urgent cases it will suffice to inform the County Council. The reports of the authorities subordinated to the County Governor have to be sent to the State Police offices through the County Council; in urgent cases it will suffice to inform the County Council at the same time.

Art. 11

The authorities of the County Police have to report directly to the responsible state police office on all important political occurrences and observations.

Art. 12

Insofar as officials of the Secret State Police within the framework of the authority of the Secret State Police take over the tasks incumbent upon the authorities and officials of the police - and security services according to the regulations of the code for criminal proceedings, they are acting as auxiliary officials of the OBERREICHSANWALT (Chief Prosecutor of the Reich) or of the State Prosecutor for the District Court (OBERSTAATSANWALT) who is locally responsible.

H1224 - 0004

Art. 13

The Chief of the Secret State Police disposes of the funds set aside for the Secret State Police in the budget of the interior administration.

Art. 14

The MINISTERIALBLATT of the Reich - and Prussian Ministry of the Interior is the official gazette for the Chief and Deputy Chief of the Secret State Police.

Art. 15

This decree will be effective on the day after its publication.

Berlin, 10 February 1936

The Prussian Prime Minister

GOERING

The Reich - and Prussian

Minister of the Interior

FRICK

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT No. 2108-PS
(pp. 22, 23, 24)

21 November 1945.

I, Charles E. Bidwell, S/Sgt. USA, 13146054, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversanr with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of (the indicated excerpt from) Document No. 2108-PS.

Charles E. Bidwell
S/Sgt. USA.
13146054

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO.2168-PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

THE SA

History, Work, Aim and Organization of the Storm Troops of the Fuehrer and the Supreme SA Headquarters.

Compiled on order of the Supreme SA Headquarters.

By SA - Sturmfuehrer
Dr. Ernst Bayer

Die SA

Geschichte, Arbeit, Zweck und Organisation der Sturmabteilungen des Führers und der Obersten SA. - Führung.

Bearbeitet im Auftrag der Obersten SA. - Führung
von SA. - Sturmführer
Dr. Ernst Bayer

1938
Junker and Dünnhaupt Publishing House, Berlin

Junker und Dunnhaupt Verlag Berlin

H1224 - 0005

H1224 – 0006

TRANSLATION OF DOC. NO. 2168-PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Writings of the Hochschule for
Politics
Edited by Paul Meier-Benecke nstein

II The organisational structure of the
Third Reich

Book 21

Schriften der Hochschule fuer Politik
Herausgegeben von Paul Meier-Bennecke nstein

II Der organisatorische Aufbau des Dritten
Reiches

Heft 21

Dr. Ernst Bayer
The SA
Die SA

"The German laborer of brain and fist, who marches in the SA, has long ago grown out of the bourgeoise notion of duty behind which stands 'I must' and has grown into the sublime feeling of the soldierly conception of duty which culminates in the absolute voluntariness of "I want to'.

We SA men want to live as men, to fight as men, and to die as men with the consciousness that we have done our utmost for and devoted our utmost to Fuehrer and Folk."

/s/ VICTOR LUTZE

H1224 - 0007

H1224 - 0008

CONTENTS

I. History of the SA
The Path of the Struggle - The SA in the Third Reich.

II. Organization.
The Branches of the SA - The Operational Staff of the Supreme SA Headquarters -- The Operational Main Office - The Main Office for Education -- The Main Office for Health - The Main Office for Personal Affairs - The Main Administrative Office - The Main Office for NS Tournaments - The Adjutant's Office of the Chief of Staff - The Special Units of the SA - Engineer and Signal SA - The Mounted SA - The Naval SA - The SA Sanitation Men - The "Feldherrnhalle" Regiment - The Reichfuehrer School.

III. PROSPECTUS
The Law of Willingness to Volunteer.

H1224-0009

1. History of the SA.

THE PATH OF THE STRUGGLE.

Germany experienced in the year 1918 a revolution whose spiritual bearers were people to whom morals, honor, and love of the Fatherland were unknown conceptions, who ridiculed soldierly virtues and fighting behavior and laughed at the performance of the German Army. Their example and their propaganda found followers because the men of that time had not learned to think clear politically, because he was tossed here and there between political, economic, and religious directions and interests, and because he did not have the power; to decide for himself, out of a deep anchorage and belief, in a great ideological ideal and so hold himself firm against a breakdown. That which the Reich of the Kaiser had failed to do, which was the internal shaping of the human being into a knowing and convinced fighter for the nation, avenged itself in 1918 bitterly.

At this time of the complete breakdown of Germany, the Fuehrer with his Idea began the march among the people. And beside and with him marched men, embodiment of soldierly spirit, who perceived their highest mission in life to be in service for a new greater Germany, ready to enter upon and to sacrifice everything for the victory of National Socialism. They are the first political soldiers of the Fuehrer, the original cell of the SA.

Are we able today to write a history of the SA? Scarcely, for this history is still too much the present and we stand too close yet to the experiences of a great period in order to be able to measure and evaluate correctly the immense performance of the fighting period and of the upheaval in its forcible measures.

Numbers are distinctive of the picture of history. And, indeed, if we would give an historical presentation of the fight and the performance of the SA, we must not only name the dates of great events, which are apparent to all the world, but also we must go out into everyday affairs and experience there the path, spirit and struggle of the SA as an historical performance of the unfolding power of a nation. Dates and numbers, however, win meaning and become valuable only if they come alive as the expression of a great deed, of an offered sacrifice or of an historical performance for the nation. And the SA has produced innumerable of such dates and figures which distinguish the path of the SA as the sacrificial way of the best of a nation. Along this path stand the eternal monuments of over 400 blood witnesses of the Movement, who gave their lives for the resurrection of Germany.

The SA was not founded as one forms just any sort of club. It was born in midst of strife and received from the Fuehrer himself the name "Storm Troops" after that memorable hall battle in the Hofbrauhaus at Munich on the 4th of November 1921. Forty-six National Socialist regulars (Ordner) stood against a thousand Marxists on this memorable day. The Fuehrer had spoken to his men before the meeting: "Today for the first time you will have to preserve the faith of the Movement come what may. Not one of us leaves the hall unless they bear us out as dead men. He who cowardly yields, from him I will personally tear off his arm band and take away his badge. Think about the fact that attack at the slightest attempt to make an explosion is the best defense."

In a bitter struggle 46 German men, who were determined to carry through to the end even at the sacrifice of their lives, beat out of the hall and put to flight a thousand Marxists. It was a baptism of fire and a test of the willingness to bear a burden which this young shocktroop of the Movement had masterfully undergone and which secured for the Party peaceful meetings up to 9 November 1925, for no Marxist dared to raise his fist again in National Socialist meetings. Outside, however, on the streets the dissembling strife continued in strengthened extent.

Blood and sacrifice were the most faithful companions of the young SA on its hard path to power. The Storm Troops were and still are today the fist and propaganda arm of the Movement. The SA was not only messenger, but also pattern for the Idea, the spiritual and physical armament of the Party and the assembly basin for the fanatical fighters of the National

H1224-0010

Socialist ideology. So the SA became the school for practical National Socialism for all German men; it has so remained up to the present day and it will be so forever in the future.

It is one of the greatest historical services of the SA that at the time when the German People's Army had to undergo a dissolution, it held high those virtues which marked the German soldier: personal courage, idealism, willingness to sacrifice, consciousness of responsibility, power to decide, and leadership. Thus, the SA became among the people the messenger and bearer of German armed strength and German armed spirit.

The 4th of November 1921 was not only the birth hour of the SA by itself, but was the day from which the young fighting troop of the Movement took its stand at the focal point of political events. With the clear recognition that now the unity (Geschlossenheit) of a troop led to victory, the SA was systematically reorganized and so-called "Centuries" (Hundertschaften) were established. The year 1922 saw the SA variously in action. On the 16th of August the first marching columns demonstrated along with patriotic associations against the protective law of the Republic (Republikschutzgesetz). The Marxists appeared but the SA struck destructively and by fighting gained for itself the liberty and right of the streets. The flow into the SA grew so, that in September 1922 eight Hundertschaften could be raised in Munich. These quickly grew further. On the 23rd of November the 11th Hundertschaft was formed, which was composed almost exclusively of students. The present deputy of the Fuehrer, Rudolf Hess, took over the leadership of this Century.

"We have to teach the Marxists that the master of the streets in the future is National Socialism, exactly as it will once be the master of the State"; thus, Adolf Hitler sketched the outlines of the task of the SA. And sooner perhaps than one supposed, the opportunity came to let deeds speak. The march in Coburg on the 14th and 15th of October 1922 became a beacon of the Germanywhich was awakening. It was to be a "German Day" set up by the citizens and it became a breakthrough battle for National Socialism. It became the day of the SA on which 800 SA men under the leadership of Adolf Hitler and Naval Lieutenant retired, Klintzsch, broke completely the Red Terror.

This mighty success and its linking danger for the system of government led to a step by the Berlin government which was often repeated in the following years: prohibition of the NSDAP for Prussia and other states. The more lively the activity became in Bavaria. For the first time, on 28 January 1923, the Reich Party Day of the NSDAP was held in Munich, where the four standards designed by Adolf Hitler himself were handed over to the SA as campaign symbols. And here, too, the 11th Hundertschaft appeared for the first time in uniform: grey cap, windbreaker, swastika band, and knotted stick.

The Ruhr invasion by the French caused the conversion of the SA, which up to then had been only a political fighting troop, into an armed association for the purpose of employing these battle-tested men in a desired active resistance against foreign domination. All pressed for a decision. And in the matter the Storm Troops of the Fuehrer did not want to be inactive. They joined themselves with other fighting Bavarian bands and formed the "Labor group of patriotic fighting associations" under the leadership of retired First Lieutenant Kriebel. In March 1923 the last commandant of the Richthofen Squadron, Hermann Göring, took command of the entire SA. Activity and readiness is the password. Out at Forstenrieder Park and on the Frottmaninger heath near Munich the Labor Group held great exercises, at which on May 1st an armed parade of the whole Bavarian SA and other fighting associations ensues on the Oberwiesen field. This day was supposed to bring the final reckoning with the Marxists. Only the employment of the Reichswehr and police prevented this intention.

The decision is pressing; the collapse of the Ruhr resistance and its consequences threaten the unity of the Reich and seem to bring about chaos. The 8th of November comes around. That evening, full of hope and certainty of success; the betrayal of that night, base and unbelievable. No one believes yet that men in the fateful and difficult hour have betrayed the struggle for Germany. On the morning of November 9th, Adolf Hitler casts his young Movement, his faithful and upright fighters, onto the scales of decision; the march to the Hall of the Field Generals (Feldherrnhalle) through

jubilant Munich. Betrayal causes this March of Triumph to become a Death March for the best of the nation.

The Fuehrer is in custody. The head of the Movement is missing in the most difficult hours after the miscarriage of the revolution. Everything appears beaten and lost. But one thing is not: that spirit of the Storm Troops which has fought for the new Reich and which has become, under the concept "Spirit of the SA", the pattern for voluntary and ceaseless preparedness for sacrifice and initiative for German men. And it was victorious over betrayal.

The faithful collaborators and comrades of the Fuehrer rescue what is to be rescued. The Illegal the SA continues and waits for the return of the Fuehrer from the prison in Landsberg. He returns in 1925, and the men of the Storm Troops, with the same spirit of readiness for sacrifice and use, come to him and are strongest support to him at the Party re-founding, which occurs on February 27, 1925. In his basic directions for the re-establishment of the National Socialist German Labor Party, Adolf Hitler ordered the refounding of the SA as a pure Party organization for meeting hall protection and propaganda, without having the character of an armed association.

And now a fight for Germany began of such a sort as was never before fought. What are names, what are words or figures which are not indeed able to express the magnitude of belief and of idealism on one side and the magnitude of hate on the other side.

1925: the Party lives again, and its iron spearhead is the SA. With it the power and meaning of the National Socialist movement grows. Around the central events of the whole Movement, the Reich Party Days, dates, decisions, fights and victory roll themselves into a long list of German men of undenying willingness to sacrifice.

One cannot count up all of this at one time. However, we wish to present the sense and meaning as we tell what the SA was: the political strong arm, the visible representation of the idealism and daily initiative (Einsatzkraft) of the Party. Generally, it stopped the breaches. As an example of a seemingly impossible deed, the 11th of February 1927 should be firmly preserved. It is the day on which the SA broke the Red Terror, with heavy sacrifice, in the hall battle at the Pharoah's Hall (Pharussaelen) in Berlin, the stronghold of the Communists, and thereby established itself decisively in the capital city of the Reich. In considering the badly wounded SA men, Dr. Goebbels coined the phrase "Unknown SA Man", who silently fights and bleeds, obeying only his duty.

Possession of the streets is the key to power in the state--for this reason the SA marched and fought. The public would have never received knowledge from the agitative speeches of the little Reichstag faction and its propaganda or from the desires and aims of the Party, if the martial tread and battle song of the SA companies had not beat the measure for the truth of a relentless criticism of the state of affairs in the governmental system. They wanted the young Movement to keep silent. Nothing was to be read in the press about the labor of the National Socialists, not to mention the basic aims of its platform. They simply did not want to awake any interest in it. However, the martial tread of the SA took care that even the drowsiest citizens had to see at least the existence of a fighting troop.

The SA conquered for itself a place in public opinion and the leadership of the National Socialist Movement dictated to its opponents the law for quarrels. The SA was already a state within a state; a part of the future in a sad present.

In this period there was only one thing: discretionless use of the person and genuine spirit of offensive. This became more essential from year to year for sudden attacks on individual National Socialists and whole columns piled up in frightful quantity. The death roster of the Movement grew. However, the greater the losses became, the more tightly the SA men closed themselves into a sworn fighting partnership. Its exemplary

H1224-0012

employment did not remain without effect. The best from the ranks of the Reds came to the "Nazis", because they were convinced by their deeds. When at the very end of 1926 the volunteer-corps fighters (Freikorpskämpfer) of the various Rossbach groups joined themselves to the SA, the SA received not only strengthening alone through that but also strong buoyancy.

With the end of 1926 there begins a new phase of development in the history of the SA. The Storm Troops until now had stood in loose connection with the political organization. A Reich branch or central command office was not yet in existence. Both were created with the ensuing founding of the Supreme SA Leadership Headquarters, on November 1st, 1926. With that a central control originated to which the SA, as well as the SS and the HJ were subordinate. Adolf Hitler appointed the Gau leader and SA Fuehrer of the Gau of the Ruhr, Franz von Pfeffer as the highest SA Leader. In the course of the years 1926 and 1927 the SA was uniformly reorganized and divided into divisions (Gruppen), Gau areas (Gaustürme), brigades (Brigaden), regiments (Standarten), battalions (Stürme), and platoons (Trupps) and at the same time a sharp separation from the political organization was achieved. That which had been established in practice became now the clear internal orientation (Ausrichtung) for the SA: the Storm Troop men should be educated into political soldiers, politically dependable, spiritually motivated, physically steeled, disciplined and devoted to the Fuehrer in unconditioned fidelity and obedience. Thus the SA became the mightiest instrument in the hands of the Fuehrer.

1927: The first huge demonstration in Nurnberg of National Socialism which can no longer be dead silent. 30,000 SA men march a bloc of will and strength. The System becomes nervous. Up to then the Executive has looked on inactively for the most part. From then on it directed all measures against National Socialism and allowed thereby more and more liberty to Communism and Marxism. The word "Forbidden" was all too well known to SA men. The Berlin SA, which had been forbidden with the Party in May 1927, coined the password: In spite of prohibition, not dead (Trotz Verbot nicht tot). And this slogan, to the discomfort of the System, became an all too living reality when it issued like hail prohibitions of all shades and shapes in the following years. One of the old veterans coined the phrase once: the history of the SA and of the NSDAP generally has been a single, almost uninterrupted succession of prohibitions. Something was always prohibited. There was never a period in which the SA was granted nearly the same liberty in all Germany as was granted to the Reichbanner or certain patriotic associations.

Brown trousers and boots in themselves were dangerous for the State. The white shirt had to substitute for the brown shirt for a long time. Often the SA men came to meeting and parades with naked upper parts of the body and with bare feet, and many in their underwear, because along the way the pieces of clothes which were dangerous to the State were taken off of them. Chicanery after Chicanery. But all of this had to be borne. However, murder and terror governed this year of the strife. And always it was National Socialists who were stamped as the attackers.

Emergency orders and measures for the protection of the Republic aided the waves of prohibition. They promised themselves results from this because they believed they dealt with factionists and did not recognize that these National Socialists were bearers and heralds of an ideology. They themselves were conscious that they were the last levy (Aufgebot) of the German Folk. Thus the SA grew to be the troop which fought most strongly against the decaying Republic. It was spared no sacrifice but also no prohibition, no trickery, and no item could stem its march.

Almost 300 dead comrades marched with the ranks of the SA, foremost among them the songster of the Movement, Horst Wessel. His sacrificial death became a new beacon of the struggle for Germany. The labor and the struggle of the SA was not in vain. They stood at the foremost front of election fights. Adolf Hitler himself on the 2nd of September 1930 took over the leadership of the SA as the Supreme SA Fuehrer. He himself guided his SA in the fateful election fight of the year 1930. On the evening of the 14th of September the first battle was won. 107 representatives of the NSDAP took their seats in the German Reichstag. A huge victory was earned through the fight, but, the System took no reckoning of it.

H1224-0013

1931: It was to be the year of decision. The Movement grew steadily; everywhere the election results were great. The burden which tested the SA was enormous, and only an iron discipline and internal union helped it to bear all the difficulties.

SA, SS and HJ were newly articulated. On April the 1st the National Socialist Automobile Corps as an auxiliary organization of the SA, which performed valuable service at election time, was founded. The 17th and 18th of October brought the SA meeting in Brunswick at which 104,000 SA and SS men passed in review before Adolf Hitler. Here before these faithful fighters the Fuehrer raised before all the world claim to the total state leadership by National Socialism. The men returned to every day affairs with enormous enthusiasm and new courage which could not be dampened by the announcement on December 8 prohibiting the uniform in all regions of the Reich.

The fateful year 1932 brings a heavy blow to the Movement. On April 13 the SA and SS are prohibited within the entire regions of the Reich, even after the vote of unprecedented activity in the second election for Reich president on April 10, 1932, had been 13,400,000 for the National Socialists. They wanted to beat an organization by the most brutal means. The wearers of the brown shirt were treated like criminals. Everything attainable was confiscated. SA homes and SA kitchens which gave protection and meals to needy and jobless SA men were pitilessly closed. Nevertheless, with exemplary discipline the SA and SS carries on and does not allow themselves to be enticed into rashness. As simple party members the SA men fulfill their duty now. Finally on June 14th the uniform and demonstration prohibition is raised. Communism and Marxism raise themselves and want to stop the victory parade with bloody force. Not less than 32 National Socialists, among whom were SA and SS men and Hitler Youths, fall as sacrifices to the Red Terror in a short six weeks. The Bloody Sunday of Altona was a terrible indictment against the governmental system. Eighteen Folk comrades are killed and 50 badly hurt. Nevertheless, the SA remains disciplined and unshaken. It is not the least of its meritorious services that the Reichtag election of 31 July 1932 brings the NSDAP a huge victory and makes the Movement the strongest Party in the Reichtag. And in spite of all, the SA men are still unprotected game, having nothing for their protection but their own strength and the fidelity of their comrades. It is difficult to clothe in words what lies and slanders were poured out over the SA during this period; it is also difficult to tell with what incomparable discipline and devotion these men have fought. "Bullies and beaters" they were called by the satiated citizenry, and yet it was they who protected the security of the citizenry from Bolshevism. "There can be no thanks for anyone when considering this greatest success of our Movement, but there is only the duty of all of us to take up and continue the fight again with renewed and increased strength" -- thus Adolf Hitler recalled to mind on the night of the victory of his Movement, and that was a command for the SA.

The time of the most difficult trials arrives. The SA knows it is for the ultimate. Victory, already within grasp, must be finally gained by fighting. Comrades fall but unswervingly the columns march. The Fuehrer told them: "Victory belongs to him who in this fight brings the last levy (Aufgebot) and the last battalion onto the battlefield." And the SA was prepared to enter its last battalion.

On the 22nd of January 1933 the decision, morally, comes. At the Bulowplatz before the Karl-Leibknecht House in Berlin, the Moscow Center in Germany, the Berlin SA parades. Before this collected strength of the Party the hirelings of Moscow crept cowardly into their lurking holes. Hour after hour the SA men passed in review before the bulwark of Communism and none of the Moscow disciples dared to raise a fist. It was a victory for the SA, the significance of which could only be measured later.

Then the day dawns which meant victory and fulfillment of the struggle of the SA: the 30th of January 1933. No command was given on this day, and yet ten thousands of SA men and National Socialists stood ready in the evening, in their old tattered brown shirts in which they had marched through murder and terror, to greet the Fuehrer, their Highest SA-Fuehrer, as Chancellor of the German Reich. In these SA men the young Germany marched

through the Brandenburg Gate into a Reich which they had fought for at the foremost front and which to form and to carry today is the highest commandment of their lives.

THE SA IN THE THIRD REICH

Just as there was no celebration of victory by Adolf Hitler and his fighting comrades after the seizure of power, so was there no moment of rest for the SA men. What was worth cleaning up, was cleaned up. Whether as auxiliary police or with special orders, whether as a propagandist or as helper, the SA man in general was there and labored silently as the shining example of the Idea in the structure of the new State. Even after victory the SA had heavy losses to lament. It was generally employed where elements of the government foreign to the people had not yet understood the signs of the time or where Communism and elements hostile to the State still insolently dared to rebel. And not the last the fight against disguised opponents was a difficult labor of the SA. But it is proud, then and now, to be the tool for strengthening the structure of the new State and of the Community of Folk. (Volksgemeinschaft).

For the first time, on April 8, 1933, the entire SA in the regions of the Reich and of Austria, stands drawn up at the same hour to avow their immutable fidelity and willingness to follow to the Fuehrer, who addressed his men over the radio from the Berlin Sports Palace. The young Steel Helmets (Jungstahlhelm) and the Steel Helmets (Stahlhelm) during the year 1933 placed themselves under the SA and became members of it. The SA during the year experiences several changes which finally result in the present form of the organization as will be described in the following chapter.

With the consolidation of inner political perceptions within Germany the type of strife of the SA changed. Just as the SA man during the fighting period was not a companion along the way to great decisions, but was the one who prepared the way, so the SA retained in the Third Reich its original task, namely: to be the Shock Troops for Ideology and as the practical school of National Socialism. The SA trained no specialists in any form for its area of labor was among the entire German Folk. To carry to the Folk, through things previously experienced and by acts, the revolutionary spirit of the fighting period, the initiative and willingness to sacrifice and to keep awake among them those virtues which are the fundamentals for the preparedness of National Socialists, is one of the huge tasks of the SA. "All that you are, you are through me; and all that I am, I am through you alone". These words of the Fuehrer, spoken to his SA on the 30th of January 1936, are a recognition as well as an obligation. It is a short formula of the platform of the SA: Germany.

The deeds and achievements of the SA are not carried upon huge rosters but are every day undertakings which will continue to live in the hearts of the people. And that is more valuable than the written word.

Several things out of the manifold labor sphere of the SA should be named in collective concepts: use at times of catastrophe, prevention of damage, thanksgiving of the Nation, cultural work, colonization, educational encampments, officer training schools, scholarships (Freiplatzspende) and many more. Over all of this is the eternal charge: shaping of human beings. The guiding motif of this labor to educate the German people is this powerful entity: strong soul, sound spirit, steel-like body.

National Socialism has never demanded a new state form but has always demanded the reformation of the individual German into a fighter who has intelligence, who has convictions, who is politically dependable, who is spiritually motivated, and physically hardened. Thus it was only the consistent continuation of a labor already begun to win the individual German when the Fuehrer handed over to the SA the execution of protective and aggressive training and education of the individual German. SA sports and SA sports badges, the latter established by the Fuehrer himself on the 15th of February, 1933, "in order to lend a conscious expression in all sections of the German people to the cultivation of a warlike spirit", are essentially the new shape of the physical and spiritual training of the individual German within the meaning of the National Socialist Ideology. Therewith, the SA was commissioned to obtain an increase of and preservation of a warlike power (Wehrkraft) and a warlike spirit (Wehrgeist) as the expression of an aggressive attitude. The creation of the NS Contest Games on November 27, 1936, as a yearly spectacle

of accomplishments of physical prowess and of a warlike spirit, and the order of March 18, 1937, that possession of the SA sports badge is made dependent upon yearly repetitive performance of the tests in order to maintain the warlike fitness of its bearers up to old age, are milestones along the way to attainment of the great goal of the SA.

The SA is aware of the magnitude of its task. But only it is able to master the tasks given by the Fuehrer because it emanates from the Folk and is a part of the Folk.

II. Organization

THE BRANCHES OF THE SA

The Fuehrer himself has designated the SA as the guarantor of the National Socialist Movement and the National Socialist Revolution. The SA is the political soldiery. In this concept "political soldiery", which was coined and found its animated shape during the fighting period, are contained all these tasks of the SA whose affairs represent still today the educational work of the Storm Troops. Tasks of this proportion are only completed by voluntary performance of service; however, they require, too, an organization which branches out widely and yet guarantees as much as possible, by a concentration of individual supervisory offices and their work sphere, a central, clear, and united management.

The Supreme SA Fuehrer is Adolf Hitler, who gives his oldest fighting formation its tasks, determines its direction of work, and commands its uses. By order of the Fuehrer the Chief of Staff represents the SA in its totality. A high measure of recognition and trust of the Fuehrer lies in this charge, for to the Chief of Staff of the SA is entrusted, for ideological and physical education and for further development, the best and most valuable young strength of the German people.

The Supreme SA Headquarters in Munich and the Office of the Adjutant in Berlin are both bureaus of the Chief of Staff; the SA Fuehrers who head these are directly responsible to the Chief of Staff for their work.

The Supreme SA Headquarters is subdivided into the operational staff, main offices, offices, and divisions. The Stabsfuehrer of the Supreme SA Headquarters determines its employment as representative of the Chief of Staff.

The Storm Troops of the Fuehrer himself, which exist in all the regions of the Reich and in the free city of Danzig, are divided according to political and territorial considerations.

The entire SA is composed of 24 groups which are subordinate to the Chief of Staff. These are: SA Group Alpenland, Bavarian Eastern March, Berlin-Brandenburg, Danube, Franken, Hanseatic, Hessian, Hochland, Kurpfalz, Middle, Lower Rhine, Lower Saxony, North March, North Sea, Eastland, Eastern March, Pomerania, Saxony, Silesia, Southern March, Southwest, Thuringia, Westfalia, and Western March.

The next subordinate branch is the SA Brigade, which is composed of several regiments. A regiment consists of three to five battalions, which is formed from three to five companies. The SA Company is organized generally into three platoons, each of which is further subdivided into three squads.

The multilateral demands which are made of the SA formations require, above all, in the use of the SA for preparations, parades, catastrophes, accidents and all other acts of assistance, the incorporation of special or technical units. Therefore, the following special branches were established: signal, engineer, mounted, naval, bicycle, and sanitary units. Local considerations and geographical situations determine their incorporation into companies and battalions and govern the consideration of subordinate positions.

THE OPERATIONAL STAFF OF THE SUPREME SA HEADQUARTERS

The Stabsfuehrer is the permanent deputy of the Chief of Staff. As such

H1224 – 0015

he is the highest authority for the collective main offices of the Supreme SA Headquarters and of the SA groups. All decisions of a basic nature for the SA, as long as they are not reserved for the Chief of Staff himself, are made by the Stabsfuehrer. Immediately subordinate to him are the liaison office of the Supreme SA Headquarters, the central division, the staff for military affairs, the press and propaganda division, the legal division, and the architectural division. The liaison office keeps in continuous touch with all important bureaus of the Party and State in order to handle all the questions which are of importance to the SA.

The treatment of occurrences of a fundamental sort, which require rapid settlement and touch on the spheres of the various main offices so that the closest cooperation with these main offices becomes a matter of course, is the function of the central division with its two main departments. The Staff commandant's (Stabskommandantur) office bears the responsibility for the total, internal operational service of the Supreme SA Headquarters.

The entire press and propaganda preparations or exploitations (Auswertung) of all important events within the SA emanate from the press and propaganda division to which is also joined publication of the fighting sheet of the Supreme SA Headquarters, the SA-Man. Following the directions given by this division, the group press departments, whose function is the trusteeship of the local press, work through the individual SA groups. The activity is above all of an informative nature; for the SA lays no value on the quantitative nature of the things written about it, but is only concerned with the fact that the German editor may be trusted with the character and task of the SA.

The legal division is still in process of being formed. On the other hand the architectural division, which likewise was newly formed, is working on plans and projects for new building designs in which the creative genius of the SA will be expressed.

H1224-0016

THE OPERATIONAL MAIN OFFICE

The chief of the operational main office is responsible for the entire organization and branches of the SA, for the education and suitable equipment of units, and, not last, for the employment of the SA.

The operational main office is subdivided into the office for organization and employment and the office for physical fitness. The latter, on the basis of the SA sports badges must prepare the fighting training of the bodies of all Germans capable of bearing arms (wehrfähig) and as preparation therefor must organize the execution of corporal exercises (basic physical training) and sports performances, so that the widest stratum of the population is laid hold upon and will be kept in condition to bear arms (wehrtüchtig) both physically and spiritual, as well as ideologically in character up to the greatest old age.

The tasks of the organization and employment office are given in its title. Besides this it is entrusted with the special units of the SA: signal, engineer, naval, and mounted units; it treats with the air and gas protection of the SA; it carries on the education of the SA in the sphere of catastrophe protection and prevention of damage; and as well as keeping liaison with all Party and public offices which come into consideration for these questions.

In addition there arises the treatment of details of clothing and equipping the SA and the regulations for office plans for SA offices as well as the perfection of suggestions for investing certain SA units with standards and names of heroic champions of the Movement.

THE MAIN OFFICE FOR EDUCATION (Das Erziehungshauptamt)

The office of education is responsible for the entire education and orientation of the SA Officers' Corps. Upon this office devolves one of the

tasks of greatest significance for the people, the Reichsfuehrer School, which consists of the Reichsfuehrer School in Munich and the Officers' School of the Supreme SA Headquarters in Dresden. The curricula and community of work at these officers' schools, as well as at the 21 group schools and special schools, serves the purpose of creating an SA officers' corps which bears the highest responsibility and great capability.

The comparatively young officers' school of the Supreme SA headquarters in Dresden, above all, serves for the education of the intermediate SA officers' corps which has earned its qualification to attend at one of the group schools. In this school the training for those who want to try out for the SA sports badge stands in the foreground. The spiritual and physical training on the fundamentals of the National Socialist's ideology pursues the purpose of making the SA Fuehrer into a real educator of his troop. The threefold harmony: Soul, Spirit, and Body, which sets in unison for the common group capability, knowledge, and accomplishment, is an essential prerequisite here. Military sport (Wehrsport), as an SA expression of sports activity, is just as much a means to accomplish our purpose as is instruction about the history of the Party and the Folk, about racial teaching, or training as speakers. The directions for this training hold good for the group schools, too, which are subordinate to the same office. The work is performed in close understanding with the leader of the group in whose territory the school lies, because he himself possesses the best possibility of choosing his future officers. This division, which is immediately subordinate to the main office, maintains liaison with the offices of Party and State, for which the experience won in the educational labor of the SA are significant. Thereby it is achieved that the educational labor of the SA stands in full and complete unison with the labor of the Party and all its branches.

The third office, ideology and culture, counts as its assigned sphere cultural forms of service (Dienstgestaltung), the cultivation of SA and Folk songs, and music. Directly and strictly avoided is publication of any sort of a service plan for festive formations, for form is not the deciding factor, but the spirit with which that form is accomplished.

The division for scientific exploitation (Auswertung), finally, contains a voluminous library. It has the task of giving to every SA Fuehrer who desires to train himself further, information about the most important literature at hand on the subject.

H1224-0017

THE MAIN OFFICE FOR HEALTH

The main health office is responsible for all questions of health and sanitary service of the SA. Since health forms the basis and prerequisite for physical fitness, the main health office inserts itself quite particularly into this branch of the SA service. Not only care of and looking after the sick and injured belong to the accomplishments of health service but, above all, preventive health care.

In the fighting period only the sanitation service existed. It is being organized and changed in some particulars at present. Ten thousand sanitation officers are trained and perfected in the best manner to be able to perform first aid at any time. The Reich Sanitation School of the SA in Tübingen represents the ground floor for entire training activity in the essentials of sanitation. In all regiments in the whole Reich there are sanitation units ready for immediate employment in catastrophe and great accidents. The sanitation man accompanies his comrades everywhere in the SA service, whether it be employment in preparations (Veranstaltungen), construction of barriers (Absperrungen), parades, marches with full pack, or in the fields of sports contest.

Training, equipment, and organization of the sanitation service are gathered together in one office, the main office for health. Next to it is a second office with the task of health operations and fostering of race. The men of the SA have recognized the value of the health of a Folk, and bear the conviction that only a sound Folk can be an eternal Folk. With this conviction they fight for accomplishment of the directions and orders which emanate from the main office for Folk health and from the Reich Surgeon. In the foremost place are the sanitation men of the SA who use themselves for that great goal: Purity of blood and Purity of Race.

H1224-0018

THE MAIN OFFICE FOR PERSONAL AFFAIRS

The trusteeship of the SA Officers' Corps, just as the care for future SA officers, is a problem not only for the members themselves but, far and above, is alsoof the greatest significance for the Party and for the entire Nation.

The personal affairs main office, which is divided into three offices: personnel, social welfare (Soziale Fürsorge) courts and justice office, works in permanent, animated touch with the SA front, where the capabilities and suitabilities of the SA officers show themselves in daily employment. A continuous exchange between this front of staff work and application to educational spheres marks the future path of the SA officers. His evaluation results from consideration of the suitability of the character of his ability and knowledge, and, above all, of his service to the Movement. The oldest veterans (Marschierer) and champions (Kämpfer) of the SA also receive leading positions within the branches insofar as they prove their capability to do the job.

If there exists in one way a reward for the old tested fighters in the assignment to fulfil a great obligation and a more responsible mission, then the office for social welfare takes care that those SA comrades who were wounded in the fight for the new Germany or who find themselves in need, are looked out for. If it was imperative (vordringlich) in the first years after the seizure of power to provide a job generally for these men, then, the problem of retraining stepped into the foreground. In the camps of Lockstedt and Falkenstein the SA gives unskilled manpower the possibility of earning, in about 40 weeks, the journeyman's certificate (Gesellenbrief), and, thereby, the prerequisites for an appointment as a skilled laborer in industry, or, in fact, in any of those places which suffer because of lack of such laborers. In addition to that men are retrained for mercantile professions and for work in administrative offices.

The same is true for the choice of settlers for those home sites which arise everywhere in the Reich by way of thanks offerings. Also here are old veterans who find a new home in the thanks-offering settlements alongside of the war victims.

To this office come officially the personal welfare matters of the men and their families. Comrades who have suffered injury at sports or in the service receive a cure or recuperation stay in the SA homes at Wyk in Föhr, Hohenlychen, or Trillup bei Hamburg. The needy are permitted support, and, in fact, in an understanding with the Reich treasurer, the means of the Adolf Hitler Thanks and the Adolf Hitler Foundation are placed at this office's disposal. Above all, however, this office interests itself in those who were injured in the fighting period by political adversaries, so that a permanent personal touch gives to these men the certainty that one will never forget their sacrifice.

As third within the main personal affairs office the courts and justice office is mentioned. One task of this office lies in the fostering of honor and of clean behavior of the SA and the SA Officer's Corps. For the clean behavior of the leadership two chambers of discipline serve. The personal rights of SA men are taken care of in a particular division.

Incumbent upon the justice division, composed of professional lawyers, is legal counsel to the main offices of the Supreme SA Headquarters and groups, cooperation with the remaining justice offices of the Movement, and, thirdly, official traffic with the Chancellory of the Fuehrer and treatment of pardon petitions of criminally convicted SA men as well as former SA members. This proceeds from the viewpoint that the SA man, it is true, on the one side has an enhanced duty to the Community of the Folk; on the other side, however, there comes into discussion manifold economics and mental after-effects of the period of the wrestling for power in the case of old tested veterans of the SA which in their significance can be fully adjudicated only by the SA.

H1224-0019

THE MAIN ADMINISTRATIVE OFFICE

The administration of the SA, in its present standard organization and proper economic operations, represents the tool which the Chief of Staff uses for the solution of great tasks given to him by the Fuehrer. Clarity is the distinguishing feature of SA administration in all its many spheres.

The matters pertaining to the property right of the NSDAP and, therefore, of concern to the SA, are placed under the Reich treasurer as Plenipotentiary of the Fuehrer. The deputy of the Reich treasurer for the entire SA administration is the Reich cashier administrator of the SA, who, without prejudice to his responsibility to the Reich treasurer, is at the same time in his quality as Chief of the main administrative office, the specialist of the Chief of Staff for all matters which touch upon the administration of the entire SA.

The large sphere of the tasks of the main administrative office is divided into three offices: a) money economy (Geldwirtschaft), budget bookkeeping (Buchführung), control of finances, and economics; b) things of value (Sachwerte), procurement (Beschaffungen), insurance and contracts; c) construction and settlement office.

The salary of SA officers and men who are on the staffs which are essential to the main offices is regulated uniformly on the basis of an office plan. It is composed of base pay, quarters allowance, and increase for marriage and children. Considering it from the political standpoint of population, the increase for children in this ideal echelon of society was settled upon.

Great frugality which is pointed to particularly at every opportunity, is understood as a matter of course in the SA. A splendidly working accounting and control system makes possible an exact review of the economic operation of all units and makes easier the immediate remedy of a shortage of any kind. The examination reports, which are requested by the Deputy of the Reich treasurer of the units are treated and made use of (ausgewertet) in one special division of the Main Administrative Office.

The great property values (Vermögenswerte) of the SA, which is a consistent part of the total fortune of the NSDAP, is laid hold upon according to number and value (stückzahl - und wertmässig) and carefully administered. Many millions flow into economy through the settlement work called into being by the Supreme SA Headquarters with the aid of the thanks-offering of the Nation. The settlement work should offer to many thousands of needy people and to families, sound in heredity and rich in children, their own homes. Aside from settlements on the edge of town the construction and settlement office in the neighborhood of Aurich erected farm settlements with 60 to 80 acres (Morgen) of land, which, above all, are managed by former farm laborers. Here, too, they put cattle and even crops at their disposal gratuitously.

The many sided tasks of SA Administration are united closely with those of the headquarters. Parades and other arrangements (Veranstaltungen), training, equipping, procurement, etc., cannot be accomplished without standard cooperation of the administration.

THE MAIN OFFICE FOR NS-TOURNAMENTS

On the 27th of November 1936 the Fuehrer decreed the following order: In pursuance of my proclamation at the Reich Party Day of Honor I hereby create for future Reich Party Days the NS-Tournament. The SA is charged with the preparation and execution of this tournament. I decree that the determinations necessary for execution be left up to the suggestions of the Chief of Staff of the SA. The Reich Sports Fuehrer is directed to cooperate with the sports department of the Supreme SA Headquarters. The Chief of Staff will keep me continually informed about the measures planned.

In order to solve organizationally the tasks sketched in this order of the Fuehrer, the main tournament office was created in February 1937. As the chief of this main tournament office, the Chief of Staff appointed the

H1224-0020

Reich Sports Fuehrer von Tschammer und Osten. By this appointment the guarantee is given that, in comradely cooperation with the Reichsbund for physical training, the tasks set by the Fuehrer in respect to the military fitness (Wehrertüchtigung) of the entire nation and the formation of a Folk will be solved by physical training.

Therewith, SA Obergruppenfuehrer von Tschammer und Osten holds in his hand responsibility for the organization and accomplishment of the NS Tournaments, which are to be held each year in Nürnberg during the Reich Party Day as an exhibition of the achievement (Leistungsschau) of the whole German people.

Incumbent upon the office simultaneously is direction of the NS Winter Tournaments and Reich Contests of the SA which also experience continuous enlargement.

The main office for the NS Tournaments is divided into three offices: organization, military sports (Wehrsport), and sports which from their titles alone indicate the limits of their spheres of work.

THE ADJUTANT'S OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF STAFF

In the adjutant's office of the Chief of Staff are treated all questions which are proposed directly to the Chief of Staff by the offices of the Party and of the State, as well as by others. Next to the very voluminous labor of dealing with those questions and lectures of the Chief of Staff on important matters, the Adjutant's Office, as the personal office of the Chief of Staff, has to take care of the preparation for and smooth execution of travel of the Chief of Staff. Continuously the Chief of Staff visits the individual Groups, using in the first place airplane, then rail transportation and automobile. All of the troublesome details, which these official trips demand, require thorough discharge so that appointments shall be kept and the entire program developed as foreseen. As a matter of course many SA Fuehrers, spending a while in the Reich capital, come in person to the Adjutant's Office to speak with the Chief of Staff. Various wishes are attended to here and many worthwhile suggestions come from the ranks of the visitors. The men in the Adjutant's Office whose task it is to do their duties in the personal service of the Chief of Staff endeavor, in order to facilitate for him his difficult and responsible task, take care of at least the pressing questions or help their fellows with professional advice. Next to that this office has value in that it fixes appointments for various official conferences of the Chief of Staff with leading men of the Party and State and in that it divides up the daily program according to current demands, so that all work can be executed smoothly. It is not easy work which the men in the Adjutant's Office have to perform; only the consciousness of helping their fellows in the broad Front everywhere in the Reich and of supporting their fight gives to their work a valuable substance.

SPECIAL UNITS OF THE SA

Engineers and Signal SA

In the same measure that the little Shocktroop (Stosstrupp) of the National Socialist Idea grew up into an organization in whose hands the Fuehrer has laid the whole physical and ideological education of our people, so in the same measure the sphere of the tasks of the brown Army of Adolf Hitler grew and received a multiformity which made necessary the special training of units which were capable of continuous employment and highest performance within their special areas.

First it was engineer companies, then further, it was signal companies. Since the time they were established, both units, when put to the test have proved that the men with "Pi " and "Na" on the lapels of their service uniform are found where German humanity needs their help. If storms whip the waves of the seas, and masses of water threaten the coasts of the Reich;

if downpours and melting snows swell the mountain streams so that fields, plains, and farms are in danger; if fire is on the point of destroying the property of German people; or if anywhere a natural catastrophe happens, one finds, in all the Gaus of the Reich and at all times, the engineers and signal men among the first helpers who strike with cheer and with readiness to sacrifice. Very few have a suspicion of what takes place in the hour of bitterest wrestle with the might of Nature, but they scarcely think about the fact that these very same men, who perhaps gave their utmost during the entire night, are a few hours later going about their callings; and only the least number have a clear understanding of what basic and careful training and what untiring practice was necessary in order to achieve a complete success in time of serious accident. And in these practices we see how a bridge is made at the turn of the hand, how blasting is executed, and can alongside the performances of the engineers, who work hand in hand with the signal units, see with amazement how the latter lay their field cables, set up their telephones, let the blinker apparatus speak, and relay reports by bicycle riders, messenger dogs or carrier pigeons, in short, how they establish connection between the front and the staffs and thereby secure smooth cooperation. The status of training of the men of the signal units is kept under constant control by the signal certificate. This certificate is proof for its holder that his status of training is complete and excellent. It must be won by examinations for three consecutive years before it is finally the possession of the signal man.

Thus there originates in these technical units of the SA a trained crew whose capabilities and knowledge are not the last things of extraordinary value in the service for defense of the country. On one side the young SA man, who enters the Army from his branch, comes prepared with a multitude of prerequisites which facilitate and speed up his training in technical respects; while on the other side those very soldiers, having served, who return out of the Army into the SA, keep themselves, by constant practice, in a trained condition physically and spiritually and impart their knowledge to their fellows.

Thus they contribute a considerable portion to the enhancement of military strength (Wehrkraft) and military spirit (Wehrgeist) of the German people. As everywhere, the soldier of the army finds here, too, his closest confederates in political soldiers.

THE MOUNTED SA.

If today in Germany the sport of riding is not as it was in past decades the prerogative and affair of a propertied class, but a thing for all of those who from enthusiasm and love of horses profess to ride, then it is just something else for which to thank the SA which has interested itself in the sport of riding as a means of fitting the people physically. The Fuehrer himself by his order about the establishment of the NS Cavalry Corps on March 17, 1936, created the basis upon which first the SA Cavalry itself and then the German youth and above all the compulsory military duty classes could be led to the sport of riding. This order soon created the necessary organizational prerequisites, so that at present the SA each year is able to furnish many thousands of young trained cavalrymen to our Wehrmacht. All those who are 18 to 20 years of age must join the NSKK and even those in younger and older year groups may join it, who come up for cavalry and motor training and want to earn a cavalry certificate before their period of service in order to be able to serve with a mounted or motorized troop.

The organization of the NSKK has its apex in the Reich Inspectorate for mounted and mobile units (Reit-und Fahrwesen) who is directly subordinate to the Chief of Staff and who at the same time presides over the recently created main office for mounted and mobile training within the Supreme SA Headquarters. In this way a conceivably close liaison has been established between both organizations, and in it at the same time lies the foundation for fruitful exchange between the SA cavalry and the NSKK. In each S.A. group was created the office of Group Cavalry Fuehrer, who is responsible to the Reich Inspectorate as his deputy for training and organization. At present the S.A. cavalry has at its disposition 101 cavalry regiments in whose schools, year in and year out, young Germans who are obligated for

service receive the training which fits them for entrance into a section of troops which is of their own choosing.

The NSKK has discovered, by creation of the cavalry certificate, a means of fostering and requiring cavalry fitness. The cavalry certificate is granted only after careful testing and fulfilling essential conditions successfully; it requires an all-embracing quantity of riding ability. Thus the cavalry certificate is a way to select and require real talent. The NSKK is still young, but two years of serious labor h ve already proven the correctness of its objective.

THE NAVAL S.A.

The men of the water's edge, the navigators and fishermen, for the most part do their duty in the naval SA, since they are concerned in their daily professions with all sorts of things having to do with navigation and water. Nevertheless, there are not only naval S.A. regiments along the ocean but also in the interior. If there is no big ship at their disposal for training, a ship built on land often suffices for the accomplishment of the careful training of the men about masts, shrouds, and deck structure. The service of the naval S.A. operates as preparation and development for the Navy. Semaphore, radio, Morse Code, and flags as signal service, navigation, cutter operation (Kutterbullen), astronomy, professional use of sailing craft, rescue service -- to mention only a few spheres of its tasks -- complete its curriculum.

For the seafaring S.A. men, however, who pass the greater portion of their lives onthe seas of the world, there is, inthe first place, ideological use as a border troop who make their appearance in foreign countries at celebrations, parades, and similar events. The naval S.A. furnishes yearly to the German merchant marine and navy splendidly prepared material and is, therefore, practically and theoretically, a valuable support of German seafaring and German navigating.

THE S.A. SANITATION MEN:

The "Sani" men, the sanitation men of the S.A., were already at hand in the fighting period if it was necessary to bring help to injured comrades. Endless numbers thanked the S.A. for these S.A. sanitation men of the fighting period. And from these simple men came physicians for body and soul, who continuously struck the correct note and whom one knew could be depended upon in every situation of life. If security and peace rule internally at present, the S.A. sanitation men have not indeed become superfluous. The Service in the S.A. which is continually prepared for use, brings with it physical danger, and many injuries can be avoided or lessened by speedy aid. Be it hot weather or frost, mischance or sudden sickness, the "sani-men" are at their post. Highest demands, however, are placed on them if, at time of catastrophe, medical assistance is not sufficient and the life of many depends upon the success of appropriate initial treatment. Then the S.A. sanitation men fall to the task and give their utmost. Unnamed and unknown they do their duty in the spirit and tradition demanded by the organization to which they belong.

THE "FELDHERRNHALLE" REGIMENT

Under the symbol, which for us National Socialists is the embodiment of supreme preparedness to sacrifice, the sacrificial runic symbol, the S.A. has created a troop which is set up to symbolize the political soldiery of our time: The Feldherrnhalle Regiment. The fact that the Supreme S.A. Fuehrer, Adolf Hitler, has appointed his tested comrade, S.A. Obergruppenfuehrer Hermann Goering, as its chief, proves the high calling which falls to the lot of this regiment today and tomorrow. As the elite troop of the S.A., it seeks to be the shining example in service and in obedience.

The measures (Masstaebe) are very strict which have been laid upon this young body of men (Mannschaft) who have assigned their lives to this regiment.

H1224-0022

Yearly young men from all callings and skills of the people thrust themselves into this original body (Stammmannschaft). Differences of heredity or property are unknown. Here it is only the man, his performance and his obligation to obey as an ever ready S.A. man the commands of his leader, which has worth.

Every possibility stands open to him who proves himself true in this regiment. He who has performed his year of service may decide to remain or return to his calling. Likewise it is possible to work his way up into the main offices of the S.A. headquarters or to enter the administrative service; the decisive factors for that, frankly, are the capabilities of the candidate and the possibilities for their use in the political life of the people.

In six great camps, which lie scattered in the whole Reich, a valuable work of education is consummated for many hundreds of apt persons. The political value of this work cannot be grasped by bare numbers and dry statistics. These are not decisive factors; it seems to us to be much more essential and for the justification of this formation of political soldiery, that out of the training of the Feldherrnhalle Regiment, National Socialists go forth who shall do their part to assure the continuation of that work begun by Adolf Hitler. For this reason there belongs in the Feldherrnhalle regiment the concepts of discipline, voluntary subordination, and leading a soldierly life as first prerequisites and basic conditions for the acceptance of future members (Nachwuchs).

Out of the apparent forms of political life developed by the present emulating in their behavior the proven example of the old S.A., the Feldherrnhalle regiment professes itself to the concept of a soldierly life. It unites in its ranks young, consciously political individuals who voluntarily wish to live their lives in hardiness and soldierly strictness.

THE REICHSFUEHRER SCHOOL

Selection of officers and planned education of officers was the innovation drawn into the circle of political work of the Party after the seizure of power. An effective instrument for such officer training is the Reichsfuehrer School in Munich created in 1931 by the Fuehrer. Many thousands of S.A. officers are oriented here in accordance with the perceptions of the fighting period in their new form and have been trained and then, supplied with knowledge and ideological learning, have gone out into their units where they impart to those whom they have to lead, the Front of the political struggle of the present and their experiences and recently gained insights.

The work of the Reichsfuehrer School today is set aside to bring the synthesis of body and mind very near to the ideal form. All technical means are employed to do that. In a nine months course of study the future S.A. officers are introduced into all spheres of political life. The Reichsfuehrer School desires to stimulate self-created labor, to teach meditation, and to shape the young S.A. officer into a consciously strong charactered, political personality. Body, mind, soul -- one cannot be thought of without the other. A hardy physical training, strict measures about health and racial values and continued supervision of the life being led are valuable, but are also indispensable expedients for strict and serious work.

A second task has been given to the Reichsfuehrer School with the comprehensive two weeks labor conference which takes place yearly in the time after the Reich Party Day, and is for the older unit officers from regimental commanders up to, and including, staff divisions. At these labor conferences the political balance sheet of the year is reckoned. Consequently, the Reichsfuehrer School has an outstanding part in the political training work of the Party. The success of the education of future officers will perhaps become apparent only in later decades, but even today the goal stands out in a clearly recognizable fashion: the individual German trained in National Socialism, hardened in mind and strength, and firm in character.

H1224 - 0023

H1224-0024

The Reichsfuehrer School of the S.A. in Dresden is guided according to similar directions. For special training of particular units there is at the disposal of the S.A. the Reich Sanitation School in Tübingen and the Reich Cavalry School in Zehlendorf.

III. PROSPECTUS

The Law of Willingness to Volunteer (Freiwilligkeit).

In the beginning of the fight there was the Party and the S.A. The goal, tasks and changing requirements of the fight have led to the establishment of the branches of the Party out of the great collecting basin of the S.A. The strong impulses which emanated from the S.A. have been carried over into the labor of all branches of the Party. All branches fulfill their work at present according to their own laws and responsibilities. Most of their officers, however, and many of the men have marched in the ranks of the Storm Troops, and, thus at present there lives and works in these branches the further quality which we call the S.A. spirit.

"The fight continues" -- that was from the start the password of the S.A. and will continue to be for all time. Never has the S.A. man fought just to be fighting, and never to be destructive, but he has fought only to be constructive. And only for that reason can the Fuehrer extend tasks to the S.A. in the new State, which have a decisive significance.

Our comrades in the past years in Austria have demonstrated with what spirit the S.A. is blessed. They were unshaken in avowal to the Fuehrer, in belief in the strength of blood, and in fidelity to their native place. They have fixed for themselves a monument to the S.A. spirit which will always renew itself. Their sacrifice was a cornerstone of liberty. They were proud to be permitted to suffer for Germany. Fate has let these men and their families go along a path whose milestones were need, hate, suffering, terror, and pursuit. Many have sacrificed their lives, and for many, who sat behind dungeon and prison walls, the hope of liberty had sunk away to nothing, and, yet not one word of bitterness came past their lips. He who fought thus is worthy of being called a German and an S.A. man.

A few months ago the S.A. men of Austria still stood in the midst of bloody fighting, and yet now they work in peaceful construction. Thus the S.A. in German Austria became the peace army of the people in the National Socialist State. The S.A. was only able to master this task because the goal always remained the same and they marched along all paths which the Fuehrer commanded, and because the voluntary will to serve is the supreme law of National Socialism.

Today the S.A. stands before the great task of being guardian and fashioner of the armed desire (Wehrwillens) and armed strength (Wehrkraft) of the German people. Its devotion, its preparedness to sacrifice, its belief in the idea, and its soldierly, combatant attitude will create and preserve in the German people that physical fitness and armed (wehrhafte) preparedness which the Fuehrer and the Reich need and without which a people cannot live.

Great achievements are only produced with unheard of personal application based upon voluntary will (Freiwilligkeit). And this law of voluntary service is the key to preparedness and successful labor of the S.A. Not spectator, but active participant is the password of the S.A. in all things it takes hold of.

H1224-0025

The Storm Troops have made their way through most difficult trials. They have withstood them because this nucleus troop bears in it unshakeably the spirit of unconditional fidelity and unconditional obedience to the Fuehrer. The S.A. exists today stronger and firmer now and forever. It knows that the Fuehrer will also assign to it inthe future new work spheres. The Storm Troops are ready to fulfil the commands of the Fuehrer and his charges with complete application because they desire in all things to be nothing other than the bearers of the Idea, the strong arm of the Movement, the secure support of the people and the German people's infantry, prepared to sacrifice and happy to attack.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
of DOCUMENT NO. 2168-PS

7 November 1945

I, WILLARD EVANS SKIDMORE, Lt. (jg) USNR, 391590, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document 2168-PS.

WILLARD EVANS SKIDMORE
Lt. (jg) USNR
391590

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 2194 PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

REICH DEFENSE LAW

G-300
Top Secret

The Ministry for Economy and Labor Saxony
Dresden and 6 for September 1939
Tel: 52151/Lang Distance 52051

Ref: Wbv:407g

To the Reich Protector in Bohemia and Maravia
Transportatinn Section,
Attention of Construction Chief, Counsellor Hirches
or Representative in the Office.

P R A G

(STAMP) The Reich Protector in Bohemia and Moravia received, Prag, 5 Sept. 1939. No. 274

Enclosed please find a copy of the Reich Defense Law of 4 Sept. 1938 and a copy each of the decrees of the Reichsminister of Transportation dated 7 October 1938--RL/310.2212/38, Top Secret--and of 17 July 1939--RL/LV 1.2173/39, Top Secret, for your information and observance. By order --

3 Encl.:

SIGNED: Kretzschmar.

Completed at Dresden 4 September 1939.

3 Enclosures.

SIGNED: Schneider.

Receipt for the letter of 4 September 1939, Wbv:407g with 3 enclosures signed 5 September 1939 and returned to Construction Counsellor Kretzschmar.

File: Wbv

SIGNED: HI.

- -

Top Secret
Enclosure 2.
RL/LV 1.2861/39G

The Reichsminister for Transportation.

RL/V 1.2173/39

Berlin 17 July 1939

44 plus 2 copies.
No. 45.

To the Subordinate Authority of the Reich and the States as well as the General Authority of the States to whom are attached:

(a) Waterways Deputies (Wbv)

(b) Deputies for local Transportation (Nbv).

(c) Deputies for ocean traffic (Sbv)

To each one individually:

Subject: Protection of the secrecy of the law for the Reich defense. (RV--Gesetz).

Ref: Decree of 7 October 1938 RL/V 10.2212/38, Top Secret

- -

The leader has agreed to the tacit omission of the secrecy protection of the Reich defense law of 4 September 1938 transmitted with the corresponding decree. In spite of the greater ease in business correspondence thus created, the following limitations, which are herewith brought to your attention for compliance, have been ordered by the competent office.

H1224 - 0026

1. It remains prohibited to cite the Reich Defense Law in public or in connection with laws to be promulgated, as well as publication of the contents of the law in its entirety.

2. It is permitted

   a. the mention of all installations founded on the Reich Defense Law and their functions in public without referring to the law;

   b. the cosignature of laws which are prepared and announced in peacetime for war.

Deputy

Signed Baur.

SECRET STATE MATTER!

To GRS Nr. 10/39

Enclosure for RL/LV. I. 2861/39 g.

The Reich Traffic Minister

Berlin, W, 8, the 7th October 1938
Wilhelmstrasse 80.

RL/W 10. 2212/38 secret state matter

47 and 3 copies

Examination Nr. 49

To the following Reich and State authorities from whom have bee n ordered

(a) deputies for water ways,

(b) deputies for the local traffic,

(c) Deputies for ocean traffic

- but especially -

Subject: Reich Defense Law (Reichsverteidigungsgesetz).

Enclosed is transmitted copy of the Reich Defense Law signed by the leader and Reich chancellor on 4 September 1938. The promulgation remains suspended.

Deputy

Signed Baur

To Wbv.: 407g.

TOP MILITARY SECRET

To GRS Nr. 10/39

1432

Reich Defense Law (Reichsverteidigungsgesetz).

of 4 September 1938.

The Reich cabinet has decided on the following law which is announced herewith.

I. State of Defense

par. 1

H1224-0027

(1) As possessor of the complete power of state, the leader and Reich chancellor can decree for the Reich territory or its parts a "State of Defense".

(2) If the political situation demands it the leader and Reich Chancellor decrees the "Mobilization". The mobilization can be limited to a part of the Reich or of the armed forces.

par. 2

(1) Once the territory of operation is determined the chief of the army and the commanders of the armies have upon declaration of the state of defense without further order the authority to exercise executive power in this operational territory.

(2) The commanders exercising executive powers can, effective for the territory of operations, promulgate laws, institute special courts, and issue directives to the officials and offices competent in the territory of operations, with the exception of the supreme Reich officials, the supreme Prussian country officials, and the Reich leaders of the NSDAP. The lawfulness of directives precedes directives from otherwise superior offices.

(3) The boundaries of the territory of operations are determined by the supreme commander of the armed forces.

(4) Special directives for the case of a surprise threat to the Reich territory.

If a part of the Reich territory is surprised by a military threat, and if special decrees for defense against this danger cannot be awaited, then the commanders of the imperiled service commands(Wehrkreise) have the right to issue the directives which cannot be delayed and which are necessary for the protection of the imperiled territory to all non-military offices within their sphere of command. The same rights apply to the commanding admirals of the Navy in case of surprise threats against the coastal territory, and to the commanders of air districts in case of surprise attacks from the air within the framework of their war tasks. The execution of these directives has precedence over the other commitments and the directives of superior offices. The named commanders can transmit their right of issuing directives to subordinate officers down to the village counsellor (Standortaeltesto).

Par. 3

(1) With the declaration of the state of defense the plenipotentiaries for the Reich administration ("Generalbevollmaechtigte fuer die Reichsverwaltung" GBV) named by the leader and Reich chancellor takes over the uniform leadership of the non-military administration with exception of the economic administration.

To him are subordinate

the Reich minister of the Interior

the Reich minister of Law

the Reich minister for science, education and popular education,

the Reich minister for religious matters

the Reich office for regional order (Raumordnung).

(2) The GBV must comply with the demands of the supreme command of the armed forces (OKW) which are of considerable importance for the armed forces. If the demands cannot be brought in accord with the affairs of the Reich administration the leader and Reich chancellor makes the decision.

(3) The GBV has the right within his sphere to issue laws with the accord of the OKW and GBW which differ from the existing laws.

Par. 4

H1224 - 0028

(1) With the declaration of the state of defense the chief deputy for economics ("Generalbevollmaechtigte fuer die Wirtschaft" GBW), appointed by the leader and Reich chancellor, takes over the direction of the economy except for the armament industry.

(2) It is the task of the GBW to put all economic forces into the service of the Reich defense, and to safeguard economically the life of the German nation To him are subordinate

the Reich minister of economics,

the Reich minister fo nutrition and agriculture,

the Reich minister of work,

the Reich chief of forestry,

the Reich commissar for price control.

He is furthermore responsible for directing the financing of the Reich defense within the realm of the Reich finance ministry and the Reich bank.

(3) The GBW must carry out the demands of the OKW which are of considerable importance for the armed forces; and he must insure the economic conditions for the production of the armament industry directed immediately by the OKW according to its demands. If the demands of the armed forces cannot be brought into accord with the affairs of economy, then the leader and Reich chancellor decides.

(4) The GBW has the right within his sphere to issue laws with the consent of the OKW and GBV which differ from the existing laws.

Par. 5

(1) The Reich postal minister, the Reich transportation minister, and the general inspector for the German road net are, with the declaration of the state of defense, bound to the demands of the OKW for the immediate affairs of the armed forces.

(2) The following will get orders from the OKW:

(a) the Reich transportation minister for the use of means of transportation,

(b) the Reich postal minister for the use and distribution of the complete communication connections to the armed forces and the other agencies.

(3) The Reich transportation minister must comply, with the declaration of the state of defense, with the demands of the GBW according to the directives given to him by the OKW for the use of the means of transportation.

(4) In the spheres of the Reich postal minister, of the Reich transportation minister, and of the general inspector for the German road net, the chief of the OKW has the right to promulgate laws in accord with the GBW and GBV which differ from the existing laws.

Par. 6

The Reich ministers and chief Reich offices carry out the task within their spheres on their own responsibility, regardless of the special competence of the chief of the OkW, of the GBV, and of the GBW, according to paragraphs 3, 4 and 5

Par 7

For the shaping of the political will of the people the deputy of the leader of the NSDAP is responsible. He uses for that the NSDAP, its formations and coordinated units.

H1224 - 0029

II. State of War

Par 8

(1) If the fight with an external enemy is forced upon the German people, the leader and Reich chancellor declares the state of war.

(2) With declaration of the state of war the war laws and war decrees come into force without further order. The legal consequences provided in other laws for the state of war become effective.

par. 9

If the state of defense is not already declared beforehand the decrees about the state of defense go into effect with declaration of the state of war.

III. Preparatory Measures

par 10

The Reich Defense Counsel (Reichsverteidigungsrat (RVR):

(1) The task of the Reich Defense Counsel consists in peace time in the decision on all measures for the prepration of the Reich defense and the gathering together of all forces and means of the nation according to the directions of the leader and Reich chancellor. The tasks of the RVR in war time will be specially determined by the leader and Reich chancellor.

(2) The leader and Reich chancellor is chairman in the RVR. His permanent deputy is general field marshall Goering. He has the right to call conferences of the RVR. Permanent members of the RVR are

the Reich minister of air and supreme commander of the air force,
the supreme commander of the army,
the supreme commander of the navy
the chief of the OKW
the deputy of the leader,
the Reich minister and chief of the Reich chancellory
the president of the secret cabinet council,
the chief plenipotentiary for the Reich administration,
the chief plenipotentiary for economics,
the Reich minister of foreign affairs,
the Reich minister of the interior,
the Reich finance minister
the Reich minister for popular enlightenment and propaganda,
the president of the Reich bank directory.

The other Reich ministers and the Reich offices directly subordinate to the leader and Reich chancellor are consulted if necessary. Further personalities can be called as the case demands.

par 11

The Reich defense Committee (Reichsverteidigungsausschuss RV):

(1) The Reich defense committee is the working committee of the RVR. It prepares the decisions of the RVR, sees to their execution, and secures collaboration between armed forces, chief Reich offices, and party.

(2) Presiding is the chief of the OKW. He regulates the activity of the committee and gives the directions to the GBV and GBW and to the Reich ministries not subordinated to them and to the chief Reich offices according to the decisions of the RVR, which directions are necessary for securing their uniform execution.

(3) The RVR is composed of the OKW, deputy of the commissioner for the four year plan, the leader staffs of the GBV and GBW, and the Reich Defense officials.

H1224 – 0030

(4) Chief office officials for the Reich defense (RV-Referenten) and their deputies are commissioned by the deputy of the leader, by the Reich chancellory, by each Reich ministry, by the Reich leader of the SS and chief of the German police, by the Reich work leader, by the Reich forest master, by the chief inspector for the German road net, by the Reich office for reginnal order, by the Reich bank directory, and in the Prussian state ministry. The RV-Referent and his deputy are immediately subordinate to the minister or the state secretary, and to the chief of the Reich office, resp.

par 12

The uniformity of the preparations for the start and the course of the mobilization is sedured by the OKW.

As regards the actual formulation of the preparations, the GBV and GBW make the arrangements for their sphere.

par 13

the Chief Plenipotentiary for the Reich Administration (GBV):

The GBV conducts the preparations for the Reich defense in the sphere of the ministries and Reich offices subordinate to him according to paragraph 3. They are bound by his directions already in peace time.

par 14

the Chief Plenipotentiary for Ecohomics (GBW):

(1) The GBW conducts the economic preparations for the Reich defense as far as they do not come in the sphere of the OKW as regards the armament industry.

(2) The GBW must secure the economic conditions for the production of the armament industry immediately directed by the OKW according to its demands.

(3) The ministries and Reich offices named in paragraph 4 (2) are, within the framework of these directives, already bound for the preparation of the Reich defense to the directions of the GBW, the Reich transportation minister to his demands according to paragraphs5 (3).

IV. Final Directions

par .5

Penal Directions.

Whoever acts against the orders of a decree promulgated on the basis of this law, on purpose or negligently, will be punished with a jail sentence and money fine or with one of these punishments, if the act is not punishable with a heavier sentence according to other decrees.

par . 16

Execution and Completion Directives.

The OKW promulgates in agreement with CBV and GBW the law and administrative directives necessary for the execution and completion of this law.

par 17

The law takes effect immediately.

Berchtesgaden, the 4th September 1938.

The leader and Reich chancellor
signed Adolf Hitler

signed Goering
General Field Marshall

H1224 - 0031

H1224-0032

The deputy of the leader
signed R. Hess

The Reich Minister of the Interior
signed Frick

The Chief Plenipotentiary for Economics
signed Walter Funk

The Reich Foreign Minister
signed Ribbentrop

The Chief of the OKW
signed Keitel

The Reich Minister and Chief of the Reich Chancellory
signed Dr. Lammers

Berchtesgaden, the 4 September 1938

Note to the Reich Defense Law

1. The Publications of the Reich Defense Law of 4 Sept. 1938, remains suspended

2. The following laws and cabinet decisions are repeated effective immediately

   A. Reich Defense Law of 21 May 1935.

   B. Decision of the Reich Cabinet of 4 April 1933 to form a Reich Defense Counsel.

   C. Rectification and completion of 13 Dec. 1934 of the decision of the Reich Cabinet of 4 Apr. 1933.

   D. Decision of the Reich Cabinet of 21 May 1935 on activity of the CB in peace times.

The Leader and Reich Chancellory
(signed) Adolf Hitler

The Reich Minister and Chief
of Reich Chancellory
(signed) Dr. Lammers.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2194 PS

3 January 1946

I, A. BREINER, X-046349, Civilian, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document No. 2194 PS.

A. BREINER
Civilian
X-046349

H1224-0033

PARTIAL-TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT
NO. 2233 PS OFFICE OF U S
CHIEF OF COUNSEL

FRANK's DIARY - Abteilungsleitersitzungen 1939/40
(Meetings of Departmental Chiefs in 1939/40)

Minutes of the 1st conference of the Departmental Chiefs on the 2nd December 1939.

Page 3,
line 4-13

The condemning to death of an archbishop and bishop gives cause to the fundamental observation that a total war against any kind of resistance is being waged in the Government General. The two bishops have been condemned quite rightly, because arms were found in their possession. If, despite that they were pardoned to hard labor, then certain other considerations were the cause for that. Reports by the press concerning the shooting of Jews are not desirable because such reports would intimidate the Jews.

Minutes of the 2nd conference of the Departmental Chiefs on the 8th December 1939.

Page 4,
par. 1 and 2.

The question of forced labor for the Jews could not be solved satisfactorily from one day to the other. Prerequisite for this would be the card indexing of the male Jews from 14 to 50 years of age. In this it had to be ascertained which trade the Jews had so far carried on, because just in those territories the Jews had had various skilled trades, and it would be a loss if this manpower would not be usefully exploited. To do this, sweeping planning is necessary. For the time being the Jews had to be gathered in columns and had to be employed wherever there was a pressing need. It is the task of the chief of the district to determine these needs.

The police was beeing reenforced by 4 police batallions. The commitment would be such that each government section was to receive one batallion. Moreover, it was ordered that the police batallions in the Gouvernment General would be relieved and interchanged from time to time with batallions from home. Already before Xmas the relief of 4 batallions would take place. No insecurity would result.

Page 7,

2 last paragraphs.

Govenor DR. LASCH called attention to the fact that the order of the Govenor General regarding the institution of compulsory work provided that

H1224 - 0034

(cont.)

Poles from their 18th year upward were to be conscripted for compulsory labor. A regulation of the age groups from 14 to 18 would also be desirable. One should not neglect the danger that particularly the youth of this age group in high schools could become a source of national resistance.

Govenor General Reich Minister DR. FRANK orders the preparation of a supplementary decree, according to which the compulsory labor was to be extended to the age groups from 14 to 18.

Meeting of Departmental Chiefs at the Bergakademie (Academy for mines).
Friday, 10th May 1940

page 23, par.1 Then the Govenor General deals with the problem of the Compulsory Labor Service of the Poles. Upon the demands from the Reich it has now been decreed that compulsion may be exercised in view of the fact that sufficient manpower was not voluntarily available for service inside the German Reich. This compulsion means the possibility of arrest of male and female Poles. Because of these measures a certain disquietude had developed which, according to individual reports, was spreading very much, and which might produce difficulties everywhere. General Fieldmarshal GOERING some time ago pointed out in his long speech the necessity to deport into the Reich a million workers. The supply so far was 160,000. However, great difficulties had to be overcome. Therefore it would be advisable to consult the district and town chiefs in the execution of the compulsion, so that one could be sure from the start that this action would be reasonably successful. The arrest of young Poles when leaving church service of the cinema would bring about an everincreasing nervosity of the Poles. Generally speaking, he had no objections at all if the rubbish, capable of work yet often loitering about, would be snatched from the streets. The best method for this hower, would be the organization of a raid, and it would be absolutely justifiable to stop a Pole in the street and to question him what he was doing, where he was working etc.

H1224 - 0035

PARTIAL-TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO. 2233 PS OFFICE OF U S CHIEF OF COUNSEL

(cont.)

CERTIFICATE OF PARTIAL-TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO. 2233 PS

25 November 1945

I, ERNST M. COHN Pfc. 33925738, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct partial-translation of Document Nr. 2233 PS.

ERNST M. COHN
Pfc. 33925738

H1224 - 0036

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 2261-PS
OFFICE OF U S CHIEF OF COUNSEL

C O P Y !

The Reichs Minister of War
and Supreme Commander of the Armed Forces
No. 1820/35 Top Secret L. II a

Berlin, 24 June 1935

TOP SECRET

To

The Supreme Commander of the Army
The Supreme Commander of the Navy
The Supreme Commander of the Air Forces

In the appendix I transmit one copy each if the law for the defense of the Reich of the 21 May 1935 and of a decision of the Reichs Cabinet of 21 May 1935 concerning the Reich's defense council. The publication of the Reich's defense law is temporarily suspended by order of the Fuehrer and Reichschancellor.

The Fuehrer and Reichschancellor has nominated the President of the directorate of the Reichsbank Dr. Schacht to be "plenipotentiary-general for war economy".

I request that the copies of the Reich's defense law needed within the units of the armed forces be ordered before 1 July 1935 at armed forces office (L) where it is to be established with the request that the law should only be distributed down to Corps Headquarters outside of the Reichministry of war.

I point out the necessity of strictest secrecy once more.

(signed) von Blomberg.

No. 1820/35 L Top Secret II a

Berlin, 3 Sept 1935

To

Defense-Economic Group G 3

copy

transmitted

(signed) Jodl

H1224-0037

COPY!

Reichs' Defense Law
of 21 May 1935

The Reichs Cabinet has enacted the following law that is hereby made public:

Part I State of Defense

ARTICLE 1.

The Fuehrer and Reichschancellor can declare a state of defense for the area of the Reich in case danger of war threatens.

ARTICLE 2.

(1) With the declaration of a state of defense the entire power of execution devolves upon the Fuehrer and Reichschancellor. The Reichsminister of war exercizes it by his orders.

(2) The Reichsminister is empowered in the carrying out of the power of execution to issue legal regulations which may deviate from existing laws. He can, in order to enforce his regulation, threaten punishments and set up special courts.

ARTICLE 3.

(1) The Reichsministers care to observe the instructions of the Reichsminister of war. They remain the highest Reich authorities within their realm of activity.

(2) The Reichsminister will in case of a state of defense effect the necessary measures and are empowered to issue legal regulations which may deviate from existing laws.

Part II Mobilization

ARTICLE 4.

(1) If conflict with an external enemy becomes unavoidable, the Fuehrer and Reichschancellor can order mobilization.

(2) The ordering of mobilization includes in itself the declaration of a state of defense according to Part I, in case the latter is not already proclaimed, without prejudice to the directive of Article Six.

(3) With the ordering of mobilization a state of war in the definition of this law begins.

ARTICLE 5.

The Reichsministers will effect the necessary measures in case of mobilization and are empowered to issue legal regulations which may deviate from existing laws.

ARTICLE 6.

(1) The Fuehrer and Reichschancellor will appoint a plenipotentiary-general for war economy to direct the entire war economy.

(2) It is the task of the plenipotentiary-general for war-economy to put all economic forces in the service of carrying on the war and to secure the life of the German people economically.

(3) Subordinate to him are:

The Reichsminister for economy
The Reichsminister for food and agriculture
The Reichs labor minister
The Reichs forest master and all Reichs' agencies immediately subordinate to the Fuehrer and Reichschancellor.

Furthermore the financing of the war effort, (in the province of the Reichs finance ministry and of the Reichsbank) will be carried on under his responsibility.

(4) The plenipotentiary-general for war economy is authorized, within his realm of responsibility, to issue legal regulations, which may deviate from the existing laws.

Part III Setting of penalties and Conclusion

ARTICLE 7.

Whoever purposely or carelessly acts in violation of a decree issued by authority of this law will be, insofar as a severer punishment is not stipulated according to other directives, punished with jail and with fine or with one of these penalties.

ARTICLE 8.

The Fuehrer and Reichschancellor will issue the necessary legal and administrative directives for carrying out of this law.

Berlin, 21 May 1935

The Fuehrer and Reichschancellor
(signed) ADOLF HITLER
The Reichsminister of war
(signed) VON BLOMBERG
The Reichsminister of the Interior
(signed) FRICK

Note
on the law for the defense of the Reich
of 21 May 1935

The publication of the law for the defense of the Reich of 21 May 1935 will be suspended. The law became effective 21 May 1935.

The Fuehrer and Reichschancellor
(signed) ADOLF HITLER

H1224-0038

COPY !

Copy. Decision of the Reichscabinet of 21 May 1935 on the Council for the defense of the Reich.

Supplementing the decision of the Reichscabinet of 4 April 1933 and 13 Dec 34 on formation of a council for defense of the Reich, the Reichscabinet has made the following decision:

1.) The plenipotentiary-general for war economy appointed by the Fuehrer and Reichschancellor will begin his work already in peace-time. At the suggestion of the chairman of the Council for the defense of the Reich, he will direct the economic preparations for war, insofar as they do not, in reference to the armament industry fall into the province of the Reichs' Ministry of war. In case of mobilization the following are subordinate to him:

Reichsministry of economic affairs
Reichsministry for food and agriculture
Reichsministry of Labor
Reichs forest-master and all Reichsoffices immediately subordinate to the Fuehrer.

In case of mobilization he will direct and be responsible for the financing of the war effort (in the province of the finance-ministry and the Reichsbank).

These ministries and the Reich's authorities are bound already in time of peace to observe his recommendations for the preparation of a war economy and the financing of the war-effort.

2.) The Reichsminister of War and the planipotentiary for war economy will effect the preparations for mobilization in closest cooperation on both sides.

3.) The plenipotentiary-general for war-economy will be a permanent working committee he represents through his leadership staff the interests of war economy. The department heads (Referenten) for the defense of the Reich of the Ministries mentioned in Point I are bound by the recommendations of this leadership staff.

Foundation:

The State of War, an institution of the old law, as it was established in the old Reichsconstitution of 1871, the Prussian law on the state of seige of 4 June 1861 and the Bavarian law on the state of war of 5 Nov 1912, has been only incompletely replaced in Article 48 of the Reichsconstitution of 11 August 1919. Moreover, the provisions of Article 48 no longer correspond to the actual legal conditions.

The new law for the defense of the Reich should create clear legal basis for the transfer of the whole machinery of state from a state of peace to one of war. In this connection it was to be noted that a state of war can begin unexpectedly or from a state of foreign political tension. Since the time of such tension must be utilized as far as foreign political relations will bear, it in order to create a readiness for war in time, the law for the defense of the Reich provides two steps for the transfer from state of peace to state of war:

1. The state of defense
2. The mobilization

H1224-0039

For both steps of war preparation, the law gives the legal basis, upon which the individual measures of the Reichsdepartments can be built up as the council for the defense of the Reich instructs.

It is to be mentioned in regard to the provisions of the law in detail:

To Article 2

The exercize of the power of execution by the Reichsminister of war under the Fuehrer and Reichschancellor should emphasize the pressing necessity of all demands of the immediate conduct of the war and should guarantee their fulfillment.

To Article 4, Section 3

In numerous laws special provisions for war are contained. It is therefore necessary, to establish the beginning of a state of war, in respect to times in order to create clear conditions for the administration of justice etc. Since, however, in a future war official declarations of war are not to be expected, as a result of which Article 42 Section 2 of the Reichsconstitution also is obsolete, the beginning of a state of war is to be considered as being at the same time as the beginning of the mobilization.

To Article 6

The experiences of the great war have demonstrated the necessity of including during a war the entire economy and the financing of the conduct of the war under unified leadership. The plenipotentiary-general for war-economy should according to the will of the Fuehrer and Reichschancellor take over the responsible leadership and stands thereby independently along side the Reichsminister of war, the possessor of the power of execution, and responsible for his realm of activity under the Fuehrer and Reichschancellor.

- - - - - - - - - -

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT 2261-PS

24 October 1945.

I, FRED NIEBERGALL, 2nd lt Inf, O-1335567, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a correct and true translation of Document 2261-PS.

FRED NIEBERGALL
2nd Lt Inf
O-1335567

H1224 - 0040

H1224 - 0041

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 2292-PS
OFFICE OF U S CHIEF OF COUNSEL

The German Air Force

(Die Deutsche Luftwaffe)

:	10.3.:
:S i	:
:	35 :

The Reich Minister for Aviation (Luftfahrt), General of the Airmen, Goering, in his talk with the special correspondent of the Daily Mail, Ward Price, expressed himself on the subject of the German Air-Force.

General Goering said:

In the extension of our national defence, (Sicherheit) it was necessary, as we repeatedly told the world, to take care of defence in the air. As far as that is concerned I restricted myself to those measures absolutely necessary. The guiding line of my actions was, not the creation of an aggressive force which would threaten other nations, but merely the completion of a military aviation (Luftfahrt) which would be strong enough to repel, at any time, attacks on Germany.

Until the present moment, this has been accomplished on a general basis, as so far we have been discussing airmen in general only without making any definite distinction from the military point of view. The British government, among other proposals, asked Germany to join an Air-Pact, whose object is to take joint action in the air against an aggressor who disturbs the peace, i.e. to put our own Air Force at the disposal of the threatened country. This is the British demand. Germany, trying to do everthing and trying to collaborate everywhere where peace can be ensured, replied by a Note expressing her agreement with such an effective protection as is represented by the air-convention.

In this Note Germany expressed to Britain the view, that Germany would be prepared to send her Air Force to the help of the threatened country.

After the German government expressed willingness to help, it became necessary to make a clear demarcation within German aviation, namely in this respect: which air force will be able to be made available? This situation brought about the decision as to those of the German aviation who will in future belong to the Air Force and those who will in future remain in civil aviation or in sport aviation. It was necessary to mark this separation also outwardly, so that the members of the German Air Force became soldiers according to the law and their leaders became officers. This involves only a part of the persons who up to the present moment have worked in the common (allgemein) German aviation. Therefore the difference between our Air Force and our civilian aviation shows itself clearly and distinctly in the various badges of rank and in the designation of rank.

I sum up: Our willingness to share in the effective defence of world peace, our assent to hasten with help to the hard pressed country, made the creation of a military aviation imperative, if our assent should not remain merely an empty phrase.

Answering the correspondent's question about the hierarchy in the new Air Force, its uniforms and its ranks the general said: "The Air Force is under the orders of the Reich Minister for Aviation who controls also civil aviation. His military rank in General of the Airmen (General der Flieger). The uniform remains similar to the uniform of the sport aviation organisation but outwardly it will be marked clearly by military badges of rank. Similarly the names of rank correspond with the military designation of rank from Lieutenant upwards to General of the Airmen." To the question concerning the nomination of German Air-attachés in foreign missions General Goering replied that the preparations for it were pending. Also about the numerical strength of the

H1224 - 0042

Air Force he said that he could not yet give final figures. As far as the percentage ratio to the Air Forces of other powers is concerned, every sensible and decent man ought to realise that Germany being particularly threatened needed such figures as would guarantee the absolute safety of the German people. Asked about the role of the Air Force within the Armed Forces General Goering stated that at the present moment, it was impossible to make a clear appreciation of the situation. But that it was definite that the Air Force must be an integral part of any defence (Sicherheit) and that without an Air Force the Army and the Navy, no matter how strong, were useless.

In conclusion the correspondent asked whether the German Air Force will be capable of repelling attacks on Germany. General Goering replied to that exactly as follows: "The German Air Force is just as passionately permeated with the will to defend the Fatherland to the last as it is convinced, on the other hand, that it will never be employed to threaten the peace of other nations."

- - - - - - - - - - - -

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO 2292-PS

30 October 1945

I, HIERONIM TROMBALA, Capt., General List, 204771, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document 2292-PS.

HIERONIM TROMBALA
Capt., General List
204771

H1224-0043

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT PS 2324
OFFICE OF U S CHIEF COUNSEL

Page 86-87

I declared at that time before thousands of fellow Germans, each bullet which leaves the barrel of a police pistol now is my bullet. If one calls this murder, than I have murdered;I ordered all this, I back it up; I assume the responsibility, and I am not afraid to do so.

Through a net work of outer offices, emerging into the headquarters in Berlin, I am daily, one could almost say hourly, informed about everything that happens in wide spread Prussia.

Page 89

We had to deal ruthlessly with those enemies of the state. It must not be forgotten that at the moment of our seizure of power over 6 million people officially voted for communism and about 8 million for marxism in the Reichstag elections in March.

Thus the concentration camps were created, to which we had to send first all thousands of functionaries of the Communist and Social Democratic parties.

Page 92

The Gestapo deserves a great deal of credit for the success of the revolution and for the consolidation of its achievements. Right in the middle of this constructive work cracked the blaze that destroyed the high cupola and the audoritorium of the Reichstag. Criminal hands had set this fire, had put German Reichstag in flames, in order to give a last beacon to dyring Communism, so that it could make one last desperate thrust before the Hitler government was consolidated. The blaze was to be the signal for the Communist party for general terror, for a general uprising and for civil war. That it did not have those consequences, Germany and the world owe not to the noble motives of Communism, but solely to the iron resolution and the hard fist of Adolf Hitler and his closest collaborators, who struck more quickly than the enemy had expected,and harder than he could imagine, and with the first blow suppressed Communism once and for all.

That night, when I ordered the arrest of 4000 Communist functionaries, I know that by dawn Communism had lost a great battle.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT PS 2324 — 15 November 1945

I, Virginia von Schon, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and the above is a true and correct translation of Document Nr. PS 2324.

Virginia von Schon
046318

H1224-0044

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 2344-PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Aufbau Einer Nation, (Reconstruction of a Nation) by Herman Goering, 2nd Edition, Published by E.S. Mittler & Son, Berlin 1934, p. 89.

---

* * * * *

"Against the enemies of the State, we must proceed ruthlessly. It cannot be forgotten that at the moment of our rise to power, according to the official election figures of March 1933, six million people still confess their sympathy for Communism and eight million for Marxism . . . . . Therefore, the concentration camps have been created, where we have first confined thousands of Communists and Social Democrat functionaries. . . . ."

* * * * *

- - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2344-PS

17 November 1945

I, LUDWIG HARTMAN, T/4, ASN 37446052, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document 2344-PS.

LUDWIG HARTMAN
T/4, ASN 37446052

H1224 - 0045

2385-P.S.

Mexico City, D. F.) United Mexican States)
) ss. Mexico, Federal District)
Mexico Embassy of the United) ss
States of America)

GEORGE S. MESSERSMITH, being first duly sworn deposes and says:

During the years 1933 and 1934, while I served as Counsul General of the United States of America in Berlin, I was in close touch because of my duties and because of the necessities of the times with the diplomatic representatives not only of England and France but with those of Yugoslavia, Czechoslovakia, Poland, Hungary, Austria, Bulgaria, Rumania, Greece, Turkey and Holland. I saw the Chiefs of these Missions, most of whom were also close friends of mine, almost every day, as well as some of their principal subordinates once or twice a week and in many cases oftener. In Austria where I went towards the middle of 1934 as Minister, my contacts with the diplomatic representatives of these countries was if anything even closer and more frequent.

I also had frequent contact during my duty in Germany with many high ranking Germans, including Goering, Goebbels, Frank, Schacht, von Papen, Funk, Lammers, Darré, Ley and many others of the same category and in secondary categories. This contact was made necessary by the nature of my duties and in the protection of our interests. While serving in Germany and in Austria, I also kept in close touch with many of the leading diplomatic and political figures in most parts of Europe with the exception of Russis where I happened at the time not to have any specific contact. These contacts which I maintained with diplomatic and political figures in other countries was based on previous associations and I kept in close contact through various trips which I made from time to time and more particularly through confidential correspondence and through mutual friends. From all these sources I obtained an intimate familiarity with the aims and methods of German diplomacy from 1933 until I returned to the United States to assume a position in the Department of State about the middle of 1937.

As early as 1933, while I served in Germany, the German and Nazi contacts which I had in the highest and secondary categories openly acknowledged Germany's ambitions to dominate Southeastern Europe from Czechoslovakia down to Turkey. As they freely stated, the objective was territorial expansion in the case of Austria and Czechoslovakia. The professed objective in the earlier stages of the Nazi regime, in the remainder of Southeastern Europe, were political and economic control and they did not at that time speak so definitely of actual absorption and destruction of sovereignty. Their ambitions, however, were not limited to Southeastern Europe. From the very beginnings of 1933, and even before the Nazis came into power, important Nazis speaking of the Ukraine freely said that "it must be our granary" and that "even with Southeastern Europe under our control, Germany needs and must have the greater part of the Ukraine in order to be able to feed the people of greater Germany". After I left Germany in the middle of 1934 for my post in Austria, I continued to receive information as to the German designs in Southeastern Europe. In a conversation with von Papen shortly after his appointment as German Minister to Austria in 1934, von Papen frankly stated to me that "Southeastern Europe to Turkey is Germany's Hinterland and I have been designated to carry through the task of bringing it within the fold. Austria is the first on the program." As I learned through my diplomatic colleagues, von Papen in Vienna and his colleague von Mackensen in Budapest, were openly propagating the idea of the dismemberment and final absorption of Czechoslovakia as early as 1935.

H1224 - 0046

The Nazis planned to gain their aims by force, preferably by the threat of force alone if possible, and by war if needed. At the beginning, however, - that is in the first two years of the Nazi regime - the Nazis wanted peace to give themselves time - that is time to arm - then to divide and isolate their intended victims. I have often heard prominent Nazis say in 1933 and 1934, and I translate literally, "We must have peace until we are ready". By the late summer of 1938, they felt themselves ready.

Immediately after the Nazis came into power they started a vast rearmament program. This was one of the primary immediate objectives of the Nazi regime. As a matter of fact, the two immediate objectives of the Nazi regime when it came into power had to be and were, according to their own statements frequently made to me; first, to bring about the complete and absolute establishment of their power over Germany and the German people so that they would become in every respect willing and capable instruments of the regime to carry through its ends; and second, the establishment of a tremendous armed power within Germany in order that the political and economic program in Southeastern Europe and in Europe could be carried through by force if necessary, but preferably by a threat of force. It was characteristic that in carrying through this second aim they emphasized from the very outset the building of an overpowering air force. Goering and Milch often said to me or in my presence that the Nazis had decided to concentrate on air power as the weapon of terror most likely to give Germany a dominant position and the weapon which could be developed the most rapidly and in the shortest time. In 1934 from a high ranking General in the German army, whose name I cannot recall for the moment, I learned that they planned to build 1200 planes that year, which was a huge air force for that period and something in terms that no one had thought of before in any country. The rapid development of this air program was obvious to everyone for one could not go out on the streets in Berlin or in any other City of importance in Germany without seeing pilots and air force trainees in evidence everywhere. They were given special privileges and special housing in order to encourage young men to enter the air training program. The rearmament program as a whole, it should be emphasized, proceeded with unbelievable rapidity. It proceeded more quickly, as high Nazi leaders themselves stated to me, than they themselves believed would be possible. It proceeded more rapidly than even informed and trained foreign observers in Germany would have believed possible even though they knew the resources of the German industrial machine.

At the same time that this rearmament program was in progress, the Nazi regime took all possible measures to prepare the German people for war in the psychological sense. Throughout Germany, for example, one saw everywhere German youth of all ages engaged in military exercises, drilling, field maneuvers, practicing the throwing of hand grenades, etc. In this connection I wrote in an official communication in November 1933, from Berlin as follows:

> "..... Everything that is being done in the country today has for its object to make the people believe that Germany is threatened vitally in every aspect of its life by outside influences and by other countries. Everything is being done to use this feeling to stimulate military training and exercises, and innumerable measures are being taken to develop the German people into a hardy, sturdy race which will be able to meet all comers. The military spirit is constantly growing. It cannot be otherwise. The leaders of Germany today have no desire for peace unless it is a peace which the world makes at the expense of complete compliance with German

H1224 - 0047

> desires and ambitions. Hitler and his associates really and sincerely want peace for the moment, but only to have a chance to get ready to use force if it is found finally essential. They are preparing their way so carefully that there is not in my mind any question but that the German people will be with them when they want to use force and when they feel that they have the necessary means to carry through their objects ..."

Military preparation and psychological preparation were coupled with diplomatic preparation designed to so disunite and isolate their intended victims as to render them defenseless against German aggression. I well remember one conversation I had with Goebbels in the earliest period of the Nazi Government, in which I expressed the opinion that they could never get away with their program in Europe. His reply was "But you don't know what we can do by creating dissension - without anything being done specifically on our part or which can be laid to our door, we will get these people to fight among themselves and so weaken themselves that they will be an easy prey for us". I can still recall the cynical manner in which he specifically indicated the "sore spots" in Austria and in Czechoslovakia and in other countries and on which by insidious means German agents could arouse dissension and get the peoples in the countries themselves disunited.

From surface appearances and judging from historical standards only, the obstacles to the achievement of the Nazi objectives were formidable indeed. Completely aside from the difficulty of bringing about complete coordination within Germany and complete control, and in carrying through such a huge military program, there were those definite obstacles in the political and diplomatic field. In 1933 France was the dominant military power on the Continent. In the interest of security she had formed within the framework of the League of Nations, a system of mutual assistance both in the West and in the East. The Locarno Pact of 1928, supplemented b the Franco-Belgian alliance, guaranteed the territorial status quo in the West. Yugoslovia, Czechoslovakia and Rumania were allied in the Little Entente and each in turn was united with France by mutual assistance pacts. Since 1922, France and Poland had likewise been allied against external aggression. Italy had a special interest in Austrian independence which she made definitely clear. From 1934 to 1936, France and Italy each proposed and endeavored to sponsor political and economic accords to strengthen the powers of resistance of the eastern European countries to German designs. Throughout all of Southeastern Europe, France and Italy both were active through their diplomatic machinery in strengthening the position of these countries and of their independence. The most important of these arrangements were the proposed East Locarno Pact, inspired by France and intended to include all countries in the East, ranging from the Baltic to the Adriatic and Black Sea, and the proposed Danubian Pact which had for its principal objective strengthening the economic position of the countries of Southeastern Europe by promoting mutual trade relations between Austria and the other countries which had recently been part of the Austro-Hungarian Empire.

Nazi Germany launched a vigorous diplomatic campaign to break up these alliances and understandings, to create division among members of the Little Entente and the other Eastern European powers, and to divide all of them from France on whose military power the security of these smaller states in the last analysis rested. To some of these countries, particularly Yugoslavia, Hungary and Poland, Nazi Germany made extravagant and often inconsistent promises

H1224-0048

of territorial and economic rewards as a price for cooperation in the German program of aggression against their neighbors. To other countries, especially France and England, Nazi Germany offered the attractive prize of peace and security as the price of giving Germany a free hand in Southeastern Europe. To allay the fears of its neighbors until Germany had completed its military and diplomatic preparations, Germany cleverly proceeded step by step, always giving solemn assurances that the immediate objective was her last. In making these promises she was uninhibited by any scruples as to the sanctity of international obligations. High ranking Nazis with whom I had to maintain official contact, particularly men such as Goering, Goebbels, Ley, Frick, Frank, Darré and others, repeatedly scoffed at my position as to the binding character of treaties and openly stated to me that Germany would observe her international undertakings only so long as it suited Germany's interests to do so. Although these statements were openly made to me as they were, I am sure, made to others, these Nazi leaders were not really disclosing any secret for on many occasions they expressed the same ideas publicly.

In this specific connection I quote from a letter which I wrote to Under Secretary of State Phillips in Washington, dated March 24, 1934:

> "Her (Germany's) agreement with Poland is only one of a series of agreements which she would like to make to follow out her policy of gaining time and allaying suspicion, but when one realizes what a callous attitude those in power here take now towards agreements of any kind, and hears what they have to say about them, one realizes that they mean nothing more than what they are intended for, i.e. a part of her policy to keep the peace and maintain the status quo until she is prepared to gain her ends through force if they cannot be achieved otherwise".

In the last analysis, however, it was not faith in Germany's promises but fear of German might and possible aggressive action which induced Germany's neighbors, particularly the small ones, to progressively acquiesce in her designs. The huge German rearmament program, which was never a secret, and which was openly announced in the spring of 1935, and Germany's reoccupation of the Rhineland, all done with only mild protests from France and England, and the failure of the League to stop Mussolini's Abyssinian adventure, convinced the peoples of the smaller countries of Eastern Europe that France either could not or would not resist German expansion in the East, that England would not take any positive steps to stop Germany, and that the only thing that was left to them was to make the best possible deal with Nazi Germany.

These considerations to be sure did not convince all people and all political leaders among Germany's neighbors. The Nazis made plain, however, that any opposition which remained would be helpless. She continued the program of stirring up internal dissensions wherever they existed in other countries and openly aided sympathetic Nazi and Fascist and anti-Government groups, particularly in Yugoslavia, Hungary, Rumania, Austria and Czechoslovakia.

Such briefly was the general plan of "German diplomacy" and political action and economic action during these years. I had occasion to follow the details of its operation from close observation during the years 1933 to 1937.

H1224 - 0049

Austria and Czechoslovakia were the first on the German program of aggression. As early as 1934, Germany began to woo neighbors of these countries with promises of a share in the loot. To Yugoslavia in particular they offered Carinthia. Concerning the Yugoslav reaction, I reported at the time:

> "...The major factor in the internal situation in the last week has been the increase in tension with respect to the Austrian Nazi refugees in Yugoslavia. ... There is very little doubt but that Goering, when he made his trip to various capitals in Southeastern Europe about six months ago, told the Yugoslavs that they would get a part of Carinthia, when a National Socialist Government came into power in Austria. ... The Nazi seed sown in Yugoslavia has been sufficient to cause trouble and there are undoubtedly a good many people there who look with a great deal of benevolence on those Nazi refugees who went to Yugoslavia in the days following July 25."

Germany made like promises of territorial gains to Hungary and to Poland in order to gain their cooperation or at least their acquiescence in the proposed dismemberment of Czechoslovakia. As I learned from my diplomatic colleagues in Vienna, von Papen and von Mackensen in Vienna and in Budapest in 1935, were spreading the idea of division of Czechoslovakia, in which division Germany was to get Bohemia, Hungary to get Slovakia, and Poland the rest. This did not deceive any of these countries for they knew that the intention of Nazi Germany was to take all.

The Nazi German Government did not hesitate to make inconsistent promises when it suited its immediate objectives. I recall the Yugoslav Minister in Vienna saying to me in 1934 or 1935, that Germany had made promises to Hungary of Yugoslav territory while at the same time promising to Yugoslavs portions of Hungarian territory. The Hungarian Minister in Vienna later gave me the same information.

I should emphasize here in this statement that the men who made these promises were not only the died-in-the-wool Nazis but more conservative Germans who already had begun to willingly lend themselves to the Nazi program. In an official despatch to the Department of State from Vienna dated October 10, 1935, I wrote as follows:

> "....Europe will not get away from the myth that Neurath, Papen, and Mackensen are not dangerous people and that they are 'diplomats of the old school'. They are in fact servile instruments of the regime and just because the outside world looks upon them as harmless, they are able to work more effectively. They are able to sow discord just because they propagate the myth that they are not in sympathy with the regime."

At this point in this statement I should set forth the following. When the Nazi Party took over in Germany it represented only a small part of the German population. It dominated all of Germany and rapidly assured itself of that domination by means of organization and terror, the details of which are an historical record and need not be set forth here. At the beginning of 1933, although a few of the Nazi leaders, such as Hitler and Hess and Goering, recognized the idea of world domination, they spoke little of it. At the beginning the great mass of the Party and the regime

H1224-0050

itself had for its open objective the domination of Southeastern Europe. Literally this meant to them at the outset absorption of Czechoslovakia and Austria and complete political and economic control of the other countries down to Turkey. They always excluded mentioning Turkey so as not to greatly disturb Great Britain. As the domination of the Germans increased within Germany as the military program progressed and as the German people increasingly became imbued with the Nazi spirit, and more rapidly than even the most fanatic Nazis had believed possible, their power increased incredibly within and without Germany. Within Germany there was an attitude of complete apathy so far as resistance was concerned. Without Germany in the smaller countries which felt themselves threatened, the fear constantly became greater. It was this growing sense of power and the realization of the fear and lack of measures of resistance from the outside that rapidly caused the Nazi idea to expand with respect to domination over Europe and in fact over the world.

In this connection it must also be borne in mind that most of the higher officers of the German Army during the first years of the Nazi regime lent their aid to the Nazi regime only because they believed that under such a regime they would be able to rebuild the German Army which they had not been able to do under previous German Governments and thus restore the power of Germany in Europe and in the world. At the outset it is probable that only a few of these Generals shared the territorial aggressive idea of the Nazis, but increasingly as the Army saw its power growing from the lower ranks to the upper they became imbued with these aggressive designs just as much as the Nazis.

For a time France and Italy endeavored to counter these moves by Germany, described in the preceding paragraphs. In 1934, Barthou, the very able and discerning French Foreign Minister, endeavored to promote an East Locarno Pact to guarantee the territory of all the Eastern and Southeastern European countries and to provide a guarantee against external aggression by mutual assistance pacts supported by France and Russia. France also continued her efforts to foster an economic accord between Austria and the other Danubian powers which had previously been members of the Austro-Hungarian Empire, while Italy sought to organize a more limited economic bloc of Austria, Hungary and Italy.

The Nazi German Government made every effort to prevent the carrying through of these accords. To Yugoslavia, for example, Germany made promises of support for Yugoslavia's ambitions with regard to Italian territory, particularly Trieste, as well as to a share of Austria. Germany's object was by sowing discord between Yugoslavia and Italy to prevent France from reaching an agreement with both of them and hence to frustrate all hopes of bringing an East Locarno Pact into being. In October 1934, I reported from Vienna, as follows:

> "...The Foreign Minister called attention to the reports which they have with respect to the intensive diplomatic activities of Germany in Warsaw, in Belgrade, in Sofia, and in Budapest. They have information, he told me, from a very reliable source that the present German policy is to create hopes and unrest, particularly in Belgrade and Sofia, so that when King Alexander goes to Paris he will face the French with a situation which will make it impossible for them to reach any agreement with Italy. The Wilhelmstrasse believes, according to the Minister's information, that if Barthou has no success at Rome the present French Ministry will

H1224-0051

have to resign on his return and a stronger left Ministry formed, with which the Wilhelmstrasse can reach some agreement. The Foreign Minister said that he did not think the Germans would succeed in this, or that a failure of the French-Italian conversations would necessarily result in a change in the French Cabinet. He did say, however, that the French-Italian agreement would be difficult because he had just learned this morning that King Alexander had been very successful during his Sofia visit which ended just a few days ago..."

To offset any moves in the direction of economic cooperation among the Danubian States, Germany made lavish but frankly insincere promises of economic support, on condition of cooperation with her. During my tour of duty in Germany, a Nazi economist named Deutz (I believe this is the correct spelling of his name) sought me out frequently. He did not occupy a very high position in the Government but was used as one of the active instruments by high Nazi leaders in Southeastern Europe. He made frequent trips to Yugoslavia, to Hungary and also on occasion to Rumania. For some reason which I could never fully determine he sought me out frequently and on returning from these trips he would tell me frankly what he had been doing and of the promises he had made of economic gains as reward for cooperating with Germany. At the same time, he, of course, cynically told me that Germany had no intention of carrying through these promises and remarked: "how dumb these people are to believe in such promises".

At the same time that Germany held out such promises of reward for cooperation in her program, she stirred up internal dissensions within these countries thsmselves and in Austria and Czechoslovakia in particular, all of which was designed to so weaken all opposition and strengthen the pro-Nazi and Fascist groups as to insure peaceful acquiescence in the German program. Her machinations in Austria I have related in detail, as they came under my direct observation, in a separate affidavit. In Czechoslovakia they followed the same tactics with the Sudeten Germans. I was reliably informed that the Nazi Party spent over 6,000,000 marks in financing the Henlein party in the elections in the spring of 1935 alone. In Yugoslavia she played on the old differences between the Croats and the Serbs and the fear of the restoration of the Hapsburgs in Austria. It may be remarked here that this latter was one of the principal instruments and most effective ones which Nazi Germany used as the fear in Yugoslavia, in particular, of a restoration of the Hapsburgs was very real. In Hungary she played upon the agrarian difficulties and at the same time so openly encouraged the Nazi German elements in Hungary as to provoke the Government of Hungary to demand the recall of von Mackensen in 1936. In Hungary and in Poland she played on the fear of Communism and communist Russia. In Rumania she aggravated the existing anti-semitism, emphasizing the important role of the Jews in Rumanian industry and the Jewish ancestry of Lupescu. Germany undoubtedly also financed the Fascist Iron Guard through Codreneau.

Such "diplomatic" measures reinforced by Germany's vast rearmament program had a considerable effect, particularly in Yugoslavia, Poland and Hungary, and sufficient at least to deter these countries from joining any combination opposed to German designs, even if not enough to persuade them to actively ally themselves with Nazi Germany Important political leaders of Yugoslavia began to become convinced that the Nazi regime would remain in power and would gain its ends and that the course of safety for Yugoslavia was to play along with Germany. This became so obvious from direct information which I had that I wrote in September 1934, from Vienna, as follows:

H1224-0052

"...The attitude of the Yugoslavs has been most disturbing. There is no question but that the Germans have complicated the already difficult problem existing between Italy and Yugoslavia by promising the Yugoslavs territorial and other advantages. There are a lot of people in Yugoslavia who feel that the present Government in Germany will stay, that it will be able to force its will on the rest of Europe and that their best bet is to play with Germany for they will get most out of it in that way in the end. This section of opinion in Yugoslavia believes that Austria will eventually succumb to Germany and that when this comes Yugoslavia will get a good slice of present Austrian territory and in addition have German support against Italy which will eventually lead to her realizing what now seems unrealizable aspirations in other directions. This sentiment in Yugoslavia explains the benevolent attitude shown towards the Nazi refugees from Austria after July 25. Yugoslavia is therefore definitely playing the dog in the manger. She will not break with France for the present and burn her bridges there, nor with the other States of the Little Entente, but she is definitely playing with Germany and it would appear that at the moment is inclined to place more dependence of Germany than on French help. The attitude of Poland has naturally encouraged Yugoslavia and what they believe to be the wavering attitude of Hungary is an additional element of encouragement to them..."

In Hungary the same attitude was becoming increasingly obvious. In the same letter I wrote from Vienna in September 1934, with respect to developments in Hungary, I quote as follows:

"...In Hungary the revisionist feeling is stronger than perhaps in any of the other Succession States, and it is this feeling which has the major influence in shaping Hungarian policy. Hungary has been flirting with Germany for some time as you know, but doing it very discreetly. The Hungarians feel very friendly towards Austria. They much prefer to see Austria independent. They don't want German domination in Austria or Southeastern Europe. They infinitely prefer the status quo, even without the treaty revision, to German domination in Austria and eventually over them. But they fear Germany and they are afraid that the present Government in Germany will be able to maintain itself, and this means in their minds definite German penetration to the Southeast. The events of June 30 and July 25 caused a real revulsion of feeling in Hungary and strengthened the feeling that they wanted to see Austria remain independent, but the feeling of fear of Germany has more recently made headway again.

"Kanya, the Foreign Minister, was in Berlin, I think now several months ago, and I know that he saw Hitler, Schacht, Neurath, and Blomberg. He came back to Hungary with the feeling that the present regime would be able to maintain itself, and strengthened therefore in his policy of maintaining an equivocal position. Hungary therefore must be considered among the States constantly wavering and endeavoring to carry water on both shoulders..."

H1224-0053

Poland, prompted by her territorial designs on Teschen, and fearful of being caught in a war between Germany and Russia, almost openly began to follow the German line, and particularly with respect to the dismemberment of Czechoslovakia. In the fall of 1935, I reported from Vienna in this connection as follows:

> "...The part which Poland is playing at this time and has been playing for some months is a very dangerous one and, in the opinion of many, not a creditable one. Poland owes her existence to France and England, and it was Czechoslovakia, whose country they now want to help divide up, who helped to make possible the new Poland. In her eagerness for prestige and additional territory she is willing to turn on her old friends and to play a rather sorry role...
>
> "...The Czechoslovakian Minister here informs me that Czechoslovakia has an arbitration treaty with Poland which in the first paragraph covers all disputes which might arise. When some time ago the Poles arbitrarily dismissed some twenty Czechs from responsible positions in Poland and no arrangement of the difficulties could be found, the Czech Government proposed arbitration, and to this day the Polish Government has not replied and refused to take any action. The Poles have an air line between Warsaw and Vienna which passes over Czechoslovakia, and when that was instituted the Czechs agreed with the reservation that when they wished to institute a line over Poland the Poles would agree. The Polish line has been in operation for some time, and when the Czechs recently wished to institute a commercial line over Poland the Poles refused to give permission. The Czechs retaliated by taking action which stopped the Polish Vienna-Warsaw route. It is well known that the Czechs are giving the Polish minorities in Czechoslovakia schools, etc., while the Poles are refusing to do anything of this kind for the Czechs in Poland. It seems to be a deliberate dog-in-the-manger policy which cannot give any confidence in the Polish procedure..."

The effect was to make these countries apathetic to the annexation of Austria and cooperative in the dismemberment of Czechoslovakia. I reported in October 1935, in this respect as follows:

> "...Yugoslavia, because of the fear of her minorities, prefers Anschluss to Hapsburg restoration in Austria, in the vain hope that this might avoid catastrophe for her. Anschluss would not avoid catastrophe for Yugoslavia, but only postpone it and make it more sure. Hungary remains fundamentally pro-German, due to the false idea that her revisionist hopes will get satisfied in that direction sooner than others. She does not realize that the revisionist satisfaction which she hopes to get from Germany would only be the forerunner of later loss of sovereignty. The fact that there are Hungarians who realize that this turning to Berlin is the sure road to ruin does not keep Hungary from putting her foot on this road.
>
> "Because Czechoslovakia has entered into a military agreement with Russia, and Rumania is about to do the

H1224-0054

same, and Yugoslavia is considering it, Berlin is trying to convince Poland and Hungary that this is a Soviet threat to them. The real object, of course, is to get their cooperation in the disintegration of Czechoslovakia and the fastening of the yoke on Austria as the first step towards progress to the Southeast..."

As the Nazi leaders of Germany realized, however, that these limited and uncertain gains were not sufficient to insure the success of her program, they did not lessen their rearmament at home so as to increase terror and fear. Austria and Czechoslovakia might easily have been saved and her neighbors persuaded to combine with them in mutual self defense if England and France at that time, with or without Italy's assistance, had shown adequate evidence of resisting the German program. Nazi leaders at that time were most insistent and persistent in endeavoring to determine the reactions to their program in Italy and in France and to a certain extent in the United States. They were eager to know to what degree these countries would resist their program. They had no regard as to what the smaller countries of Europe might feel or think or do. Their physical power was already so great that that was no longer a matter of concern to them. I recall conversations with Nazi leaders at this stage, when I happened to see them in Germany on trips from Vienna to Berlin, during which they showed a childish eagerness to get my reaction to what they were doing and when I told them that they were precipitating a war in which Germany would be defeated and her power in Europe destroyed, not for generations but perhaps for centuries, they laughed in my face and said that England and France and we would do nothing and they knew it.

Germany succeeded in preventing any such combinations by creating divisions and by persuading France and England to acquiesce, as the price of peace, in the German expansion in Southeastern Europe, in exchange for precarious security in the West.

While Italy openly opposed efforts at Anschluss with Austria in 1934, Italian ambitions in Abyssinia provided Germany with the opportunity to sow discord between Italy and France and England and to win Italy over to acceptance of Germany's program in exchange for German support of Italy's plans in Abyssinia. The Nazis made little effort to conceal their motives in supporting Italian colonial adventures. In the summer of 1935, I was informed by a person whose name I do not recall at this time but who was thoroughly informed as to all developments in Germany, that the Nazis were eagerly awaiting an Italian-Abyssinian war to give them a free hand in Central Europe. I reported at the time:

"...He emphasized that in the party it was definitely reckoned with that war between Italy and Abyssinia was inevitable, and that this would cause disturbances in the European situation which the regime felt it must be free to reap all benefit from..."

Germany, of course, did take advantage of the situation to force Austria into the July 11, 1936 accord, which, as I have explained in a separate affidavit, was the first critical step in the disintegration and eventual downfall of Austria.

The Nazis fully realized, however, the necessity for the neutralization of France and England, as a part of their strategic preparation for war, and they left no stone unturned to achieve it. Almost from the beginning of the Hitler regime, the Nazis sought to make a deal with France. The terms of the deal with France were

H1224 - 0055

security for France in the West in exchange for freedom of action for Germany in the East. Very soon after coming to power, Hitler announced that apart from the Saar, Germany coveted no territory of France and thereafter he often repeated these assurances, particularly on the occasion of each new treaty violation or act of aggression in the East. Acceptance of the deal would of course reduce France to a second-rate power. To gain French acquiescence, the Nazis made powerful appeals to all classes of French society. To the left, they played on the profound pacifist sentiment of the masses. To the right, they emphasized the fear of communism, fears which took several forms, either that the Nazis, after the reoccupation of the Rhineland, were invulnerable in the West and could be stopped in the East only by the Red army, or conversely (after the purge of the Russian army in 1937) that Russia could not fight Germany, but intended to let France and England exhaust themselves in a war with Germany and then arise in the end the only victor.

To England, the Nazis made substantially the same arguments, and appealed in addition to those who disapproved of French military hegemony and the alleged inequalities of the Versailles Treaty. As an evidence of their alleged desire to reach a permanent understanding with England, Germany "accepted" a naval limitations treaty and dangled before the eyes of the British Government the prize of a Locarno Air Pact.

In order to assure wider acceptance of these arguments, Germany did not hesitate to attempt to arrange to involve England and France elsewhere in order to give Germany a freer hand in Eastern Europe. Germany actively supported Italy in both her Abyssinian and Spanish adventures, thereby embroiling Italy with France and England. By means of an understanding with Italy announced in 1936, and by the formation of the anti-Comintern Pact with Japan at about the same time, Germany created such potential dangers for England in the Mediterranean and in the Far East as to discourage England from continuing to maintain the commitments undertaken by her in Eastern Europe.

These German measures with respect to France and England were surprisingly effective. The French Ambassador in Berlin, M. Francois Poncet, who was married to a member of one of the powerful industrial families of France, was persuaded that German military might could not be matched and as I learned from friends in the French Foreign Office, sent home many defeatist reports. As early as the fall of 1935, I learned from these same friends and others that France was preparing to abandon its commitments in the Southeastern part of Europe in exchange for promises of security within her own borders. The Nazis appeared to have equal success in undermining British sentiment. The "conversion" of Lord Lothian and the attitude of the London Times beginning in 1935 are a matter of historical record. The attitude of such conservatives was naturally reflected in British diplomacy.

Germany was ready. She had completed her rearmament program. She had sown discord among her intended victims in Eastern Europe.

H1224-0056

She had won tacit English and French acceptance for German expansion in the East in exchange for a promise of peace in the West. Germany was ready now to march. The rest is written history.

/s/George S. Messersmith

Subscribed and sworn to before me, William L. Brewster, a Vice Consul of the United States of America, duly commissioned, and qualified, in Mexico, D. F., Mexico, this 30th day of August, 1945.

/s/ William L. Brewster

William L. Brewster
Vice Consul of the United States
of America

Service No. 6809
Tariff No. 38
No fee prescribed.

H1224 - 0057

DOCUMENT NO. 2504-PS
OFFICE OF U. S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Document No. 49 of "The Polish White Book - Official Documents Concerning Polish - German Relations, 1933 - 1939",
Published by Authority of the Polish Government by Roy--Publishers, New York

Extract from Minute of M. Beck's Conversation with M. von Ribbentrop

Munich, January 6, 1939.

M. Beck asked M. von Ribbentrop to inform the Chancellor that whereas previously, after all his conversations and contacts with German statesmen, he had been feeling optimistic, to-day for the first time he was in a pessimistic mood. Particularly in regard to the Danzig question, as it had been raised by the Chancellor, he saw no possibility whatever of agreement.

In answer M. von Ribbentrop once more emphasized that Germany was not seeking any violent solution. The basis of their policy towards Poland was still a desire for the further building up of friendly relations. It was necessary to seek such a method of clearing away the difficulties as would respect the rights and interests of the two parties concerned.

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 2532-PS
OFFICE OF U. S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Gerd Ruehle
Das Dritte Reich (The Third Reich)
Die Kampfjahre 1918-1933
publ. Hummelverlag, Berlin

P. 103, line 29
p. 106, 4th para

When von Kahr gave a speech on the evening of 8 November 1923 in Munich in the Great Hall of the Bürgerbraukeller and all "Bavarian Big Shots" were assembled there, Adolf Hitler appeared, created order with a shot of his pistol into the ceiling of the room and declared the National Revolution and Dictatorship! At the same time Adolf Hitler was supported by the association of fighting groups - the SA, the Bund Oberland and the Reichskriegsflagge who stood ready for action and assembled in Munich. Several high Government officials (ministers) and several Marxist Munich city officials were arrested. Kahr, Lossow, and the Colonel of Police, von Seisser, declared their willingness to cooperate. On the same evening, the "Provisional National Government" was established:

Reich Chancellor	Adolf Hitler
Leader of the National Army-to-be	Gen. von Ludendorff
Reich Minister of War	von Lossow
Reich Minister of Police	von Seisser
Reich Finance Minister	Feder

At the same time Kahr was appointed as State Administrator for Bavaria; Pohner as Bavarian Prime Minister, and Dr. Frick as Munich Police President.

The infantry school, under the former leader of the Freikorps Rossbach and Lt. Robert Wagner (the present governor and Gauleiter of Baden) placed himself unqualifiedly at the disposition of Adolf Hitler. The Reichskriegsflagge (under the leadership of Ernst Rohm, who betrayed the Fuehrer in 1934) occupied the Bavarian Ministry of War (its banner was carried by today's Reich leader of the SS, Himmler, Chief of the Secret State Police, Gestapo). The Hitler "shock troops", a small elite group from the SA under Party member Berchtold, occupied the building of the Social Democratic "Munich Post" and destroyed its machines.

The Munich population applauded with great enthusiasm. The nightmare was over at last.

In the meantime, Kahr, Lossow and Seisser, who had given Ludendorff their word of honor left the place of the proclomation. Now on the same night, they organized the anihilation of the National Revolution! Just as on the 9th of November 1918, Marxism had given Germany a stab in the back, so the reaction gave the nation a stab in the back on the 9th of November 1923. On the night of 8 November, Kahr, Lossow and Seisser alerted the police, pulled troops into Munich and declared through radio addresses and press releases that their agreement in the Bürgerbraukeller was "forced upon them at the point of a pistol" and thus invalid. (At the same time, a proclomation came from the "Constitutional Bavarian Government" in flight toward Regensburg against the "Prussian Ludendorff" which was signed by Minister of Culture, Dr. Matt). Frick, Pohner and Major Huhnlein (the present head of the National Socialist Motor Corps) were arrested in the Munich Police Headquarters. Adolf Hitler was left without communication all through the night. Emmissaries who were sent by him did not return - they were imprisoned.

H1224 - 0058

Hitler was without the least intelligence until the afternoon of the next day. Naturally, in the meantime, the betrayal of Kahr had become known. Of the available alternatives - either to carry on the fight outside of Munich and to withdraw at first to Rosenheim, or the march through Munich into the interior of the city - Adolf Hitler chose the last in order to win public opinion and to ascertain how Kahr, Lossow and Seisser would react. One could not imagine that they would be so stupid as to fire on these insurgent people. The march began - Adolf Hitler, Ludendorff and their subordinates at the front. Patrols of police retreated before the parade. At the Marienplatz the parade was greeted by jubilant masses of people. At the Feldherrnhalle it was stopped by a strong cordon of State Police. In the later trials (see part 12), Adolf Hitler described the succeeding moments: "There was a carbine shot and immediately thereafter a salvo, Scheubner fell forward and pulled me with him; I felt as if I had been hit. I tried to raise myself again, the shooting stopped, there were only dead around me".

The murderous fire of the reaction against the National Socialist demonstration parade at the Feldherrnhalle drained the blood of the National Revolution. 14 dead National Socialists and many wounded lie before the Feldherrnhalle, among them badly wounded the leader of the SA, Hermann Goering. As a result of the counter defense of the attacked National Socialists, the State Police also suffered 4 dead. Almost the same time during the attack on the War Ministry two men, members of the Reichskriegsflagge, were shot by troops which surrounded the building. The National Socialists dead on the 9th of November 1923 were:

Felix Allfarth, Merchant
Andreas Bauriedl, Hat maker
Theodor Casella, Bank clerk
Wilhelm Ehrlich, bank clerk
Martin Faust, bank clerk
Anton Hechenberger, locksmith
Oskar Körner, merchant
Karl Kuhn, waiter
Karl Laforce, engineering student
Kurt Neubauer, servant
Claus von Pape, merchant
Theodor von der Pfordten, Councilor of the highest State Court of Bavaria
Johann Rickmers, retired cavalry captain
Max Erwin von Scheubner-Richter, Engineer
Lorenz Ritter von Stransky, Engineer
Wilhelm Wolf, merchant

Adolf Hitler was not hurt in the murderous gun play. His faithful companion, the badly wounded Ulrich Graf, covered him. The deadly hit Scheubner-Richter pulled him to the ground, where he sustained a serious shoulder wound which put him out of combat. He is brought to the house of Party member Hanifstaengl in Uffing (on the Staffelsee) by auto.

Already on the preceding night, Kahr, who liked to call himself publicly "Governor of the Monarchy" had proclaimed the dissolution of the Nazi Party, the Reichskriegsflagge and the Bund Oberland, as well as authorized a prohibition of the Völkischer Beobachter. The offices of the NSDAP are closed, Party property robbed and most of the National Socialist leaders (among them Bruckner, Frick, Amann, Streicher, Hühnlein, Dietrich Eckart) arrested as far as they had not - with the approval of the Fuehrer - fled across the Austrian border, as e.g. the seriously wounded Goering. On the 11th of November a large police detachment appears in Uffing and arrests Adolf Hitler.

H1224 - 0059

Rosenberg, Amann and Drexler illegally attempted to hold together the remainder of the dissolved National Socialist Party. Major Buch (the present head of the Party Court) undertook the same function in regard to the S.A.

(On the 23rd of November 1923, the National Socialist Party was forbidden throughout the Reich by the Chief of the Army Leadership, General von Seeckt. On 9 November he had been appointed to the Command of the Army with full executive powers in the Reich.

H1224 - 0060

H1224-0061

Page 107, par. 3 The Hitler trial and prohibition years

The Hitler trial

In spring of 1924 Hitler was dragged to court. In the famous "Hitler trial" (26 February to 1 April 1924) the following men were indicted besides him before the People's Court at Munich I: General Ludendorff, Dr. Frick, Chief Counsellor at Court Pöhner, Lt. Col. Kriekel as military leader of the "Kampfbund", 1st Lt. Brückner (today the Adjutant of the Führer) as leader of the SA regiment Munich, 2nd Lt. Wagner (today governor and district leader of Baden), Dr. Weber as leader of the "Oberland Bund", Capt. Röhm as leader of the Reichskriegsflagge, 1st Lt. Pernet (ladendorff's stepson). In this dramatic trial which made all of Germany listen, the "defendant" Adolf Hitler became in reality the accuser, the accuser against the "state" of the November treachery, the accuser also against the treacherous, particularistic - mundane reaction, represented by the "witnesses" Kahr, Lossow and Seisser, whose peculiar wrong attitude came clearly to light the last few weeks and months before the "Hitler-putach". We presented already a section of the trial proceedings against Adolf Hitler concerning this point in the last chapter Chapter 11). The tremendous arguments between national socialism on one side and the white-blue Bavarian reaction and the state of Weimar on the other side gave the trial its characteristic mark. Adolf Hitler was doubtless the moral victor when he made his concluding speech on 27 March 1924, after weeks of trial proceedings.

page 108

His statements about power and justice, the November fall (November-sturz), Bismarck's constitutional conflicts and other historical examples made the inner justification of the whole court proceedings appear in a very doubtful light. This description of the German development since 1918 and of the terrible conditions, in all spheres of life, into which the German nation had gotten through the fault of its rulers, proved that this condition was not at all a real state, was no authority worthwhile protecting - that, on the contrary, it was national duty to remove this condition. To do this duty and to save Germany from destruction was the only motive and the only aim of the uprising of 9 November 1923. But also for formal legal reasons this "indictment for high treason" was more than questionable - since the real men of the so-called - and permanent - "state coup" (Kahr, Lassow and Seisser) were not - the accused. Adolf Hitler proved clearly in his concluding words that it was not he who put these men in a difficult position ("Zwangslage"), (as was argued), but they had done that to the national socialistic movement (as can be seen clearly from the incidents described in the preceding chapter). At the end Adolf Hitler emphasized that the national socialists fallen on 9 November 1923 had died for the deliverance of the fatherland and that the hour would come when the great decision will yet be made. He finished with the proud sentence:

"May you pronounce us guilty a thousand times, the Goddess of the eternal court of history will smilingly tear up the accusation of the prosecutor and the sentence of the court; because she pronounces us free."

On April 1, 1924 the sentence was announced:

Adolf Hitler, Kriekel, Pöhner, and Weber were each sentenced for high treason to 5 years of confinement in a fortress (whereby they were promised probation after serving 6 months). Frick, Brückner, Wagner, Röhm and Pernet were sentenced for "aiding to high treason" to 1 year and 3 months confinement in a fortress with immediate probation. Ludendorff was pronounced not guilty.

On the very same day Adolf Hitler was transferred to the fortress Landsberg. In special processes still other national socialistic leaders were sentenced to long prison terms also for high treason, as Max Amann, Julius Streicher and the present deputy of the Führer, Rudolf Hess. Also forty members of the shock troops ("Stosstrupp Hitler") were sentenced on 28 April 1924, among them the present chief mayor of Munich Karl Fiehler and Julius Schaub, for years the constant companion of the Führer.

page 109

(page 134, line 3) ..... While Dr. Goebbels is speaking on 11 February 1927 in the Pharus halls before an overwhelming communistic majority, when the communists begin to attack the few national socialists - then the hall guards, the Berlin SA under party member Daluege, beat the communists into flight in a tough, bitter fight. Although they suffer a great number of seriously and slightly injured, the national socialists are victorious.

(page 160, paragraph 4) On 28 March 1929 the SA reserves were founded for party members over 40 years of age. On 1 April the so-called "commissaries" ("Zeugmeistereien") were created which should serve the SA with the supply of reasonably-priced and good uniforms (At this occasion it has to be mentioned that every SA man paid for his uniform with his own funds, and besides also made other financial sacrifices for the movement, most of the time had to pay his own fare when he had to travel by train or truck to a distant meeting place, etc. -- while the foaming Jewish press of all shades always and always again made the infamous lie that the SA men are "paid" by the Nazi Party and this way tried to degrade them as mercenaries. It was apparent, to be sure, that it was incomprehensible to such low characters as these slanderous news reporters that one can do a job out of idealism without pay, thereby risking life and existence -- and on top of this makes constantly material sacrifices). The unshakable national socialistic idealism remained, however, stronger than the powers of the ruling mammonism.

Page 165, paragraph 2) The NSDAP advanced in a broad front - comprising city and country, worker and bourgeois, youth and old age. And if people in the opposition believed to be able to strike a decisive blow at the recruiting power of the national socialists by uniform prohibition, they were very much mistaken. Bavaria made the beginning. Then followed a uniform prohibition in Berlin on 2 June 1930, after that, on 11 June, a brown-shirt prohibition in all of Prussia. The SA marched in white shirts -- if this was prohibited, then in "robber's uniform" ("Raeuberzivil") -- but they marched. And always more marched with them. On 3 July Prussia prohibited its officials to be members of the NSDAP and communist party of Germany.

(page 167, paragraph 3) The legal way which Adolf Hitler had taken at the new founding of the party in 1925, and which he had followed in unchangeable consequence, proved to be the best weapon against the November system.

The legality of the NSDAP was strengthened by Adolf Hitler by his oath before the state court in Leipzig on 25 September 1930. On 23 September the famous "trial of the Ulm officers of the German armed forces (Reichswehr)" (among them the present SA Gruppenfuehrer, party member Ludin) began here for "forming of national socialistic cells" in which Hitler had been called as a witness by the defense councilor party member Frank.

In his speech the Fuhrer declared, among other things:

> "We are not interested in destroying the German armed forces (Reichswehr). I would consider this the greatest crime possible .....I have only the desire that the army as well as the German nation should accept the new spirit, our spirit."

The statement of the Fuhrer before the state court that the NSDAP will win the victory with only legal means, but that - when the national socialistic victory would be won - a court of justice would come which would find the just atonement for the November treachery -- and that also "heads will roll", brought forth in the Jewish press once again loud consternation and indignation.

(page 194, line 3) But the NSDAP marched on, - in spite of the hatred of the enemies and the rage of the press which on 12 September 1931 once again found fitting occasion to get terribly excited, - when it came to clashes (on the day of the Jewish New Year) between SA men and Jews on the Berlin Kurfürstendamm. In the following trial, known as "Kurfüstendamm trial", several SA leaders and SA men were sentenced to severe imprisonment for having slapped some Jews in the face.

H1224 - 0062

page 206, line 3) And a new blow was struck against the NSDAP by the system: After all house searches did not reveal sufficient material against the SA, Severing finally and inspite of it succeeded to get the Reich minister of the interior Groener to agree on the disbanding of the SA and SS, since these represented a "private army" and a constant threat. On 13 April 1932 an emergency decree is issued "for the maintenance of state authority" of which paragraph 1 reads as follows:

"All para-military organizations of the NSDAP, especially the storm troops (SA), the elite guard (SS), with all staffs belonging thereto and other institutions, including the SA-observers, SA-reserves, motorized storm troops, cavalry storm troops, aviation corps, motor corps, medical corps, officer training schools, the SA-barracks and the commissaries (Zeugmeistereien) will be dissolved effective at once."

In the argument for this decree it says among other things:

"The named organizations represent a private army, a party army, although partially without arms. Hundreds of thousands are formed into shock troops bound by absolute obedience to commands, and partially put in barracks-like quarters, which can and have acted like military or police teams. Even without heavy weapons such groups can commit acts of violence at any time and put parts of the population under the pressure of force. Already the existence of such a fighting organization which forms a state within a state is a source of constant alarm for the peaceful citizens."

On instruction of Adolf Hitler, the disbandment was executed in a disciplinary manner, the SA and SS men were asked in a proclamation by the Fuhrer to put themselves entirely at the disposal of the political organizations and to perform their duty there in order to bring the coming election fights for the dict to a victorious end.

The SA had disappeared from the street, sure, but to believe that now the national socialist movement - the "state in the state" - could still be annihilated, was a ghastly mistake. Because the development ripened already toward a decision.

(page 220, line 13 from the bottom) The government was helpless against the civil war in Germany which took on increasingly frightful shapes. On 10 July 1932 again bloody surprise attacks and street battles occurred in all parts of the Reich -- this day alone cost 18 dead and about 200 seriously injured! The most extensive street battles developed on this day in OHLAU (Silesia) where the Reich Canner attacked the national socialists in manifold majority and according to plan and where even the German armed forces (Reichswehr) had to be committed. Still more terrifying was the so-called "ALTONA's bloody Sunday", which was a week later - on the 17 July 1932 - : The communists attacked a propaganda march of the SA in Altona in an extensive fire fight from ambush. The 17th of July brought
age also in other parts of Germany again heavy fights. Its casualty list
221 is still bigger and shows 19 dead and 285 heavy casualties. -- The national socialists had during the time of the abolition of the uniform prohibition (17 June) until the end of July 1932 alone 32 dead and thousands of injured! --- After the Altona bloody Sunday the government finally saw itself compelled to do something.

(page 226, last paragraph) The rage of the opponents over the national socialistic victory showed itself in wild terror acts against which the national socialists defended themselves. On 1 August 1932 SA storm leader
age Axel Schaffeld who was politically active in the student corps was shot
227 in Brunswick. However, the majority of the newspapers lamented about the "national-socialistic terror" - asusual - and the Prussian Reich Commisar Dr. Bracht declared:

"The state government will not shy from drastic measures to fulfill its duties toward the peaceful citizen and to force the public peace which our country needs."

H1224 - 0063

And when party member Hermann Goering demanded from Bracht decisive last measures against the red terror gans on 3 August 1932.- considering the increasing number of murders of national socialists - the Reich cabinet replied on 9 August with the publication of three new emergency decrees in which the "public peace" ("Burgfriede") (already ordered for the time after the election) was prolonged from the 12th to the 31st of August, special courts were established against "political acts of violence", punishments of hard labor and even death were threatened.

The new law was immediately applied - against national socialists! Five national socialists were sentenced to death in the so-called Potempa trial in Beuthen on 22 August 1932. A wave of rebellion swept through the country and Adolf Hitler made the affair of his comrades his own and challenged the government to a most vigorous fight (On 2 September 1932 the death sentence was converted into hard labor for life, and in 1933 - after the taking over of the power by the national socialists - the condemned were set free again).

19 November 1945

CERTIFICATE OF PARTIAL TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2532-PS 20 November 1945

I, Ernst M. Cohn, Pfc 33925738, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct partial translation of Document No. 2532-PS.

ERNST M. COHN
Pfc, 33925738

H1224 - 0064

H1224-0065

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO. 2801-PS
OFFICE OF U. S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

DISCUSSION

General-Fieldmarshall GOERING with the SLOVAK Minister Dr. DURKANSKY

Also present: the Head of the Propaganda Section of the SLOVAK Government MACH; Leader of the Germans in SLOVAKIA, KARMARSON; Reichsstatthalter SEYSS-INQUART.

To begin with DURKANSKY (Deputy Prime Minister) reads out declaration. Contents:- "Friendship for the Fuehrer; gratitude, that through the Fuehrer autonomy has become possible for the SLOVAKS." The SLOVAKS never want to belong to HUNGARY. The SLOVAKS want full independence with strongest political, economic and military ties to Germany. BRATISLAVA to be capital. The execution of the plan only possible if the army and police are SLOVAK.

An independent SLOVAKIA to be proclaimed at the meeting of the first SLOVAK Diet. In the case of a plebiscite the majority would favour a separation from PRAGUE. Jews will vote for Hungary. The area of the plebiscite to be up to the MARCH, where a large SLOVAK population lives.

The Jewish problem will be solved similarly to that in Germany. The Communist party to be prohibited.

The Germans in SLOVAKIA do not want to belong to Hungary but wish to stay in SLOVAKIA.

The German influence with the SLOVAK Government considerable; the appointment of a German Minister (member of the cabinet) has been promised.

At present negotiations with HUNGARY are being conducted by the SLOVAKS. The CZECHS are more yielding towards the Hungarians than the SLOVAKS.

The Fieldmarshall considers; that the SLOVAK negotiations towards independence are to be supported in a suitable manner. Czechoslovakia without Slovakia is still more at our mercy.

Air bases in Slovakia are of great importance for the German Air Force for use against the East.

- - - - - - - -

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2801-PS

19 November 1945

I, ERNST M. COHN, Pfc, 33925738, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the ENGLISH and GERMAN languages and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document No. 2801-PS.

ERNST M. COHN
Pfc, 33925738

Pf Exhibit USA 577
Filed Jan. 8, 1946

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 2827 PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

38

Das Dritte Reich (The Third Reich) Pages 250-253

The Four Years Plan comprises a generous utilization of German ability and German inventive spirit, the creation of numerous new industries, a comprehensive and systematic directing of economy and last not least an education of the entire nation for responsible economic conduct in all the big and little matters of daily life.

The Fuehrer charge Pg (party Comrade) Goering with this immense task, who had been appointed already on 27 April (see para 6) commissioner for all matters concerning foreign currency and raw materials. The "Decree for the execution of the Four Years Plan" dated 18 October stated as follows:

"The realization of the new Four Years Plan announced by me during the party congress of Honor requires a unified direction of all forces of the German nation and the strict coordination of all agencies of party and state which are concerned. I charge Prime Minister (Ministerpraesident)Col. General Goering with the execution of the Four Year Plan.

Prime Minister Col. General Goering will take the measures necessary for the accomplishment of the tasks given to him, and has the authority to issue decrees and general administrative directives. He, for this purpose, authorized to question and issue directives to all authorities, including the highest Reich authorities, and all agencies of the party, its formations and attached organizations. Berchtesgaden, 18 October 1936.

The Fuehrer and Reich Chancellor

Adolf Hitler"

And PG Hermann Goering went about the accomplishment of these tasks with his characteristic energy and vigor. On 24 October the press was able to publish the First Decree by Prime Minister Goering on the Execution of the Four Years Plan (voelkischer Beobachter, 298th Edition), which contained the necessary organizational preparations as to the method and distribution of the work.

"The Fuehrer and Reich Chancellor has charged me with the execution of the new Four Years Plan announced by him at the party congress of honor. I shall accomplish that mission in spite of any obstacles and difficulties that may arise. Just as I am responsible to the Fuehrer and Reich Chancellor for the success of the plan as a whole, the persons whom I designate to work with me on this task will be responsible to me for their respective duties.

Only by strict fulfillment of duty and cheerful cooperation of all concerned can the goal we have fixed be attained. The fulfillment of the task given to me will be carried out with the most comprehensive employment of the competent agencies, whose responsibility continues without limitations. New offices will be established only if absolutely necessary. All persons or organiztions of the party and state participating in this plan are subject to my instructions.

I shall exercise by authority under the official title of "Prime Minister Col. General Goering, Commissioner for the Four Years Plan".

In the second part of this decree Prime Minister Col. General Goering states that for the making of basic decisions he will avail himself of the cooperation of the special ministers concerned formed into a ministerial committee. State Secretary and Chief of the Reich Chancery Dr. Lammers and Dr. of engineering Keppler will be members of this ministerial committee as Chief Experts for the development of German raw and working materils. The following will also attend these discussions: The deputy of the Prime Minister in all current affairs, State Secretary Koerner, and the chiefs of the business groups of the Four Years Plan.

In the third part of the decree the organization is regulated with which Prime Minister Col. General Goering will accomplish the tasks which were delegated to him by authority of the Fuehrer. The detailed directives concerning this matter read as follows.

H1224 - 0066

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 2827 PS
Continued

H1224 - 0067

I.

In all currect matters pertaining to the Four Years Plan [illegible] shall be represented by State Secretary KOERNER.
Ministerialrat Marotzke will be the personal delegate (Referent) of the State Secretary.

II.

The business matters are divided into the following groups:

1. Production of German raw and working materials;
2. Distribution of raw materials;
3. Arbeitseinsatz (utilization of labor)
4. Agricultural production, as far as it is connected with the Four Years Plan.
5. Price Control
6. Foreign Currency matters.

Questions dealing with the press will be handled for all business groups by the Ministerial-dirigent Dr. Gritzbach as chief of my press bureau.

III.

The tasks of the group "Production of German raw and working materials" are handled by:

1. a) Office for German raw and working materials.

It is responsible for:
1. Stepping up the production of German industrial raw materials.
2. Planning and executing the manufacture of German working materials with exception of the ones listed in b); the Reich agency for regional planning (Reichsstelle fuer Raumordnung) is to be consulted in the selection of suitable manufacturing sites.
3. Furtherance of research required for the mentioned tasks.
4. The mineral oil industry including the processing (Bewirtschaftung) of materials imported from abroad or otherwise produced outside the Four Years Plan.

Lt. Col. of the General Staff Loeb, is designated chief of the bureau. The financial questions of the development program are to be handled in conjunction with the Reichsministries of Finance and Economics.

1 b.) Dr. of engineering Keppler.
The planning and carrying out of the production of industrial fats is encumbent upon him.

In addition Prime Minister Col. General Goering has appointed Dr. keppler, whose former plenitpotentiary powers have been incorporated into the more comprehensive mission of the Prime Minister, to be his personal advisor for questions on the development of German raw and working materials, and as a particularly important mission has given him the special task of reorganizing the geophysical exploration of the German soil and of promoting most vigorously.

The financial questions of the development program are also to be handled in conjunction with the Reichsministries of Finance and Economics.

2. The distribution of raw materials will be handled by Prime Minister Kochler of Baden, as commissioner for the distribution of raw materials in conjunction with the Reichsministry of Economics and the Reich Office for Foreign Currency (Reichsdevisenstelle), who at the same time will retain his duties in the land of Baden.

Prime Minister Kochler is responsible to me for the proper distribution of the raw materials to the various requirements taking into consideration their urgency, and for corresponding work on the part of the supervisory agency; by my orders, he also will handle all questions having to do with the importation of foreign raw materials in cooperation with the competent

departments or the agencies which I shall charge with the carrying out of transactions for the purpose of procuring foreign raw materials.

3. The utilization of labor will be handled by Ministerialdirector Dr. Mansfeld as commissioner for labor utilization in conjunction with the Reichsministry of Labor, as well as Präsident Dr. Syrup. (Both will at the same time retain their duties in the Reichsministry of Labor or in the Reich institute (Reichsanstalt)).

4. The agricultural production connected with the Four Years Plan will be handled by State Secretary Backe (retaining his previous duties in the Reichs ministry of labor).

5. Oberpraesident (provincial governor) and Gauleiter Josef Wagner will handle price control according to the provisions of the law to be promulgated (retaining his former duties).

6. Foreign Currency matters will be directed by Ministerialdirector Staatsrat Neumann. He will handle in addition matters of general nature which may come up, will take care of the maintenance of liaison between the various groups and will cooperate in the promulgation of laws and decrees. Ministerialrat Gramsch will be at his disposal.

The last part of the decree regulates the cooperation of the various business groups among themselves.

CERTIFICATE OF PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO. 2827 PS

15 December 1945

I, CHARLES E. BIDWELL, Civ., hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct partial translation of Document No. 2827 PS.

CHARLES E. BIDWELL
Civ.

H1224 – 0068

DOCUMENT NO. 2828-PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

SECRET

AUTH: CC,US Gp CC
INIT: McG.
DATE: 21 July 45

SPECIAL DETENTION CENTER "ASHCAN"

TRANSCRIPT OF RECORD OF FINANCIAL INTERROGATIONS OF

Hermann Goering
Walther Funk
Schwerin von Krosigk
Hans Lammers

NOTE : These interrogations were conducted by Major Hiram Gans, Financial Branch, G-5, SHAEF, on June 2, 3 and 4, and by Mr. Clifford J. Hynning, Finance Division, US Group CC (Germany), and Lt. Herbert Dubois, Financial Branch, G-5, SHAEF, on June 25, and 26, 1945.

H1224 – 0069

H1224-0070

Pages 42 to 58

INTERROGATION OF FUNK
4 June 1945

Q. What is your full name?

A. Walther Funk

Q. Do you have any other names?

A. Immanuel is my middle name.

Q. What is your address?

A. Berlin Wannsee, Am Sandwelder 17-19. Also a small farm in Bavaria where my wife later lived at Bergerhof near Bad Tölz. I have lived there lately. I have no other addresses. The house in Wannsee was an official residence.

Q. What positions have you held?

A. In the Nazi State or otherwise?

Q. Your last position?

A. President of the Reichsbank since 1939. Reich Economic Minister. Reich Director 1938.

Q. Have you had any other jobs since 1938?

A. No.

Q. Before 1938 what positions did you have?

A. Press chief of the Reich Government; State Secretary in Propaganda Ministry. Held those 2 jobs since 1933.

Q. What kind of job did you have before 1933?

A. Since the middle of 1931 headed an Economic-Political Information Service and before that for 15 years was editor in chief of the Berliner Börsen Zeitung. Headed the Economic Political Service at the request of German Industry and Economy and I joined the party in 1931.

Q. What was the name of the Information Service?

A. "Wirtschaftspolitischer Pressedienst" (Economic-political press service). It was mainly for leading people of leading offices. I was press chief in the office for only 7 months and then took over as party press chief. Then in the Propaganda Ministry I dealt with theaters, films and similar matters.

Q. Who asked you to become liaison in the Ministry of Economics?

A. A wide circle of industries, mainly coal and mining people and especially certain associations called Bergbauverein in Essen.

Q. What are the names of the people who asked you?

A. Albert Vögler, Vereinigte Stahl-werke - still with the same company.
Knepper, Gelsenkirchner Bergwerksverdien.

Q. Was I.G. Farben on your list?

A. All mining companies.

Q. Name the individuals with whom you had contact.

A. Thyssen but did not deal with him personally.
Peter Klöckner, had old mining industry.
Diehn.
Kalisyndikat.
Rosterg Wintershall.

Q. Was there anyone from the Rhein Metal?

A. No.

Q. What about Krupp?

A. He was a member but I had nothing to do with him personally.

Q. Was there anyone from the Alexander Mine?

A. I do not think so.

Q. Did they approach you or did you have to go to them?

A. They approached me. When I was editor-in-chief of the Berlin paper, people approached me saying they wanted someone to exert economic and political influence in the new party which they assumed eventually would gain power in Germany but these people were in doubt as to the economic aims of the party and wanted them clarified. I was in touch with the party men at Munich, Gregor Strasser and later with Hitler.

Q. Have you travelled outside of Germany for the industries?

A. No.

Q. Did you get a contribution from the industries for the Nazi party?

A. Not directly but whenever I put those people in touch with Hitler - then there would be a conference with Hess or someone and they would organize collections for the party. It was only in some instances during the election in 1933 when the party was seriously financially embarrassed that they would contact me and I would obtain initial funds for the party from industries.

Q. How much?

A. In 3 or 4 cases where direct intervention was sought, the total was approximately ½ million marks.

Q. Were there any other funds or gifts made for the party from industries?

A. No, they were always for Hitler - they went through Hess.

H1224-0072

Q. Did you get anything from Goering?

A. I had hardly any connection with him.

Q. Were any gifts made to Goering directly?

A. I do not know.

Q. You joined the party in 1931?

A. In the summer of 1931.

Q. What position did you hold in the party?

A. No particular position. I was regarded as economic adviser of the party. There was no particular office.

Q. Was this newspaper and news service profitable?

A. The real owner was Dr. Wagener who held some sort of economic position with the Nazi Party.

Q. Had you connections with Dr. Wagener before you became liaison with industry and the party?

A. Before I joined the paper was relatively small and since I had a well known name a good many industrialists started to subscribe.

Q. How many subscribers?

A. This was a very long time ago but I think there were approximately 60 but they paid very well.

Q. Did you furnish economic intelligence to them?

A. Furnished information on economics and politics - also economic articles. The whole thing lasted for about 1½ years.

Q. What was Dr. Wagener in the party?

A. I think he was head of the Political Economy Office but I am not certain. Later on he completely disappeared from the picture. By virtue of Dr. Wagener having that office Dr. Wagener took part in the Nazism of Germany in industry by removing from industrial associations and chambers of commerce people who were not Nazis and replacing them with others who were Nazis.

Q. Is that how you got your appointment?

A. At that time I was in the Propaganda office and press chief.

Q. Was this your only source of income?

A. No other source of income. Since entering the State I have less money than before. I had a very high income as editor-in-chief of the paper.

Q. How much?

A. Regular salary of 36,000 marks. Also wrote for other papers and gave lectures. My total income was a little over 40,000 marks a year until 1931.

H1224 - 0073

Q. As President of the Reichsbank did you control issuance of Reichsbank currency?

A. Yes, the Reichsbank would get written note from the Reich Finance Minister signed by Hitler instructing the Reichsbank to discount treasury bills up to a certain limit. The duty of the Reich Finance Minister was to satisfy the financial demands of the Reich and especially the Reich Armaments which were very high.

Q. Who asked for initial production of treasury bills? Was it the Ministry of Economics who decided how much money was necessary?

A. The Reich Ministry of Finance. Economics had nothing to do with it. Prior to my taking office another system was enforced which had been devised by Schacht. It inserted the so called mefo into the financial apparatus whereby the bills were issued by the Mefo but when I took office I eliminated mefo which only served to conceal from the general public the financing methods used.

Q. Who had control of the manufacture of currency in Germany - the Reichsbank ?

A. The Reichsbank.

Q. How many outstanding now ?

A. I do not know what happened during the last 2 months. There were approximately 60 billion outstanding prior to that time.

Q. How many Rentenmarks?

A. Approximately 2 billion.

Q. Is this pretty close to being accurate?

A. Yes.

Q. Are there any papers or records which would indicate exactly?

A. The last exact records were with the Reichsbank either in Berlin or Weimar. After that they went to little communities between the various Reichsbank branches.

Q. Where were the places? Where were they manufactured?

A. Berlin - Reich Printing Works; Zwickau; Vienna; Witzenhausen near Kassel. Later since there was a great scarcity of bills in southern Germany, I prepared an auxiliary Reichsbank note to be printed in Munich but it never came to pass as Munich was occupied.

Q. Were there any other places?

A. No.

Q. What about Linz?

A. The place in Linz was making photostatic copies of certain denominations and certain serial numbers with a view to overcoming the emergency period caused by the scarcity of bills in Austria. These

photostatic copies were to be recalled later when adequate supplies of bills were available.

Q. Did you issue the photostatic copies with the same number?

A. They all had the same number. This was necessary because no notes had been printed in southern Germany. The paper on which these were published was quite different from the regular money temporarily being issued. It was necessary to do this to pay wages.

Q. Were they photostated or photoengraved?

A. They were a regular photostatic copy. They just looked slightly different. Also they were printed on a different size paper. An announcement was published that these would be used as emergency money. The notes had full legal tender and were to be recalled later.

Q. When were they published?

A. About the last 2 weeks before occupation.

Q. What month?

A. The end of April.

Q. In what cities?

A. All over Austria.

Q. Who made them and where were they actually made?

A. I myself have not seen the notes. The photostats were made in printing shops. Made by the local Gau Economic Adviser.

Q. Who had control of the quantity of money to be manufactured in the towns?

A. The Reichsbank because the notes could be issued only by the Reichsbank in accordance with Reichsbank instructions.

Q. Who controlled the paper?

A. The Gau Economic Chamber in Linz and Salzburg.

Q. Who controlled the sheets of this paper actually made?

A. The Gau Economic Chamber had advisers in the plant.

Q. What about the Reichsbank?

A. The Reichsbank never had any direct supervision in the regular printing shops. The printers were pledged and it was not necessary to exercise any control.

Q. Was there a special kind of paper used for this photostating?

A. I do not know the procedure.

H1224-0075

Q. When treasury bills were discounted with the Reichsbank and you made to order notes to be printed for the quantity of bills discounted, how many treasury bills were issued in this way?

A. Approximately 250 billion in short termed treasury bills.

Q. Any other securities?

A. Shortterm - Schatsanweisungen with maturity from 6 to 12 months.

Q. Who issued them?

A. Reich Minister of Finance sold through the Reichsbank.

Q. Were they sold to the public?

A. Sold to banks and large industrial concerns.

Q. To insurance companies?

A. Yea, but not so much. Sold mainly to Banks and armament firms.

Q. About how much of this type of paper was issued?

A. 150 billions approximately. I am not certain and things may have changed during the last 2 months.

Q. What else was issued?

A. Long term paper.

Q. How much issued?

A. 150 billions but the Reich Finance Minister would know better. He obtained the money while the Reichsbank was only the sales office.

Q. About how much in gold would the Reichsbank have?

A. At what time?

Q. At any time?

A. Beginning in January 1945, 450 million Reichsmarks in gold

Q. February?

A. In February 1945 by instructions of the Fuehrer the gold was moved to a mine in central Germany but this was captured by the American troops.

Q. All of it?

A. There were smaller items in various Reichsbank branches. Most of the deposits with the Reichsbank branches were taken over by the American Military Government. There is an exception of 10 tons of gold which was given to a Wehrmacht unit for safe keeping and protection. To date and according to the latest information I do not know whether or not it has been found because no one knows where the officers are that had the gold

H1224-0076

Q: What unit had it?

A: It was taken by a unit of mountain troops. The mountain troops suggested taking the gold into the mountains because previously it had been hidden in a mine in Bavaria which was not suited. The officers have not been found so the gold cannot be traced. Lists of the gold in this connection were preserved at the Reichsbank.

Q: Where?

A: In Munich.

Q: Where is the list of all the gold?

A: In Berlin.

Q: There are no lists any place else?

A: The Foreign Exchange Director, Friedrich Wilhelm, has all records and if he moved out of Berlin he may have taken them along. He knows about all the small items spread out but they have all been taken by the American Army. The American officers interrogated him and told him where such stocks of gold were found.

Q: All the gold with the exception of a few small lots were put in Merkers?

A: By far the biggest item, 400 million.

Q: All the rest totaled 50 million?

A: Yes.

Q: How many deposits in balance?

A: 6 or 7.

Q: Where?

A: They are all small items. Konstanz Reichsbank used to buy Swiss francs from Switzerland. At Lindau on Lake Konstanz in the Reichsbank we have small items in circulation.

Q: Any place else?

A: No.

Q: Did you decide where this gold should be distributed?

A: In the case of very large sums I made decisions but on smaller sums the Reichsbank did the directing.

Q: How much did Himmler get from you?

A: Himmler did not get anything from me.

Q: How much did Himmler get from the Reichsbank?

A: I do not believe he got anything from the Reichsbank.

SECRET (Funk)

Q: Did you get gold from Himmler?

A: Once the SD made a Verschlossenes Depot a deposit of which the Reichsbank had no knowledge of the contents.

Q: On other occasions would the SS make any deposits?

A: I do not know.

Q: What about their deposits of gold?

A: Definitely not. I know of only one deposit by the SD and the contents is not known.

Q: Did the SS ever bring in deposits of rings, gold teeth or anything else?

A: No.

Q: Are you sure?

A: I do not know because jewelry is something the Reichsbank does not handle.

Q: Did you ever melt gold to bullion?

A: No.

Q: Did you melt gold bars?

A: I am not familiar with this and had nothing to do with things of this sort. As President I was concerned only with questions of foreign exchange and deposits.

Q: Isn't gold a question of foreign exchange?

A: So far as the Reichsbank is concerned, everyone in Germany owning gold coin or foreign exchange surrendered it to the Reichsbank for Reichsmarks currency. This was completed before I took office. When I took office I found the gold there which was gradually consumed, then a sizeable receipt from Belgium and France. At first the Reichsbank refused to accept it because the property rights were not clearly defined.

Q: All this happened after 1938?

A: Yes, during the war.

Q: The gold you are talking about, wasn't that gotten from Vichy?

A: The Reichsbank received it from the Foreign Office.

Q: Where did the Foreign Office get it?

A: From the Vichy Government. The Foreign Office and the Four Years' Plan were the 2 governmental agencies concerned with the gold.

Q: What did they do with the gold?

A: The Reichsbank took it over on account of the law called "Kriegsleistungsgesetz."

H1224-0077

H1224-0078

SECRET
- - - - - -

Q. Who wrote the law?

A. Minister of the Interior.

Q. Who objected to your taking this gold?

A. I did.

Q. Why did you object?

A. Because the ownership rights were not clear. It was the gold that the Belgium Government and Belgian Central Bank had deposited in France.

Q. Do you want us to believe that you had been a member of the party since 1931 and you did not want to receive this gold?

A. Yes, because it would have encouraged serious consequences with the Reichsbank in international relations with other central banks which were entirely in accord.

Q. Do you know anything about deposits of jewels or metals made in the Reichsbank?

A. I know the Four Years' Plan had diamonds in custody at the Reichsbank not owned by the Reichsbank and with which the Reichsbank had nothing to do. They were left there as protection and later were placed at the disposal of a jeweler who worked on diamonds.

Q. We will give you one more chance - have you any large deposits of gold in the Reichsbank in suitcases?

A. No.

Q. Do you know Melmer?

A. I am hearing his name for the first time.

Q. Did Melmer deposit any gold in the Reichsbank?

A. I am hearing his name for the first time.

Q. Do you know Max Heileger?

A. I am hearing his name for the first time.

Q. Who would handle the receiving of gold in the Reichsbank?

A. The office working under the Director, F. Wilhelm.

Q. Is he the only one that would know?

A. His was the only office responsible for receiving and handling gold and foreign exchange.

Q. Who had charge of withdrawals of gold from the Reichsbank?

A. The same office.

Q. Were you informed of withdrawals?

H1224-0079

S E C R E T (Funk)

A. Only very large items. I definitely did not hear names.

Q. How large a sum was delivered to the Four Years' Plan?

A. The Four Years' Plan could dispose of all gold held by the Reichsbank. In addition to that, there was a special gold reserve fund at their sole disposal and the Reichsbank could not touch it. This special fund included the 450 million marks in the fund that I mentioned earlier.

Q. In 1938 you became President of the Reichsbank. How much gold did the Reich have?

A. Not quite 500 million marks.

Q. In 1944 how much gold?

A. A considerable increase occurred only with the influx of Belgian gold -- otherwise reduced through sales of gold to foreign countries.

Q. How much did they have before?

A. Before receiving the Belgian gold approximately 500 million.

Q. How much in Belgian gold?

A. 400 million.

Q. And in 1940 about 900 million ?

A. Including the Belgian gold.

Q. This includes the special gold fund of the Four Years' Plan?

A. This does not include the special fund.

Q. How big was the special fund?

A. It is difficult to say off hand - somewhere between 150 and 200 million.

Q. Then in 1941 how much gold was there?

A. I do not know. All I know is that the gold stock was gradually reduced at the end and left only the gold received from Belgium plus a small remainder. The bulk went to Rumania for the purchase of oil or wheat.

Q. Who in Rumania?

A. The Rumanian National Bank.

Q. Did they insist on payment in gold?

A. Definitely, only against gold payment were we able to obtain wheat.

Q. Weren't you occupying that country?

A. No.

H1224-0080

S E C R E T (Funk)

Q. Were troops there?

A. They had troops together with Reich troops just stationed there.

Q. Was any gold sent to Sweden ?

A. At the beginning of the war Sweden took some gold but has taken none lately.

Q. Was any gold sent to Switzerland?

A. Sales of gold were constantly made.

Q. How much gold was sold?

A. I do not know the details but it would be a considerable amount.

Q. Can you give us a figure?

A. I definitely cannot give a figure. It could have been 100 million or more.

Q. Was any gold sent to South America?

A. I do not know of any gold transaction to South America. We did with Spain via Switherland. Also sold gold to Portugal and smaller items to Hungary, Belgium and Czechoslovakia.

Q. Did you give any gold to any individuals in Germany?

A. No.

Q. Did you give any to the Four Years' Plan?

A. Not from us. The management could request from the Reichsbank from its stocks of gold for certain purposes. I do not know if it ever happened. I think the gold transactions by the Four Years' Plan were made via the Reichsbank.

Q. How was foreign exchange supplied in the normal way to somebody who needed it?

A. Request for a permit made with the department of the Reich Economic Ministry concerned with Foreign Trade and there it was decided upon. If the request was granted, the Reichsbank paid out the foreign exchange.

Q. Who was the head of this?

A. Dr. Kirchfeld and before him to the Under State Secretary von Jagwitz. The last named man was already there when I took on the job in the Reich Economic Ministry.

Q. Why did von Jagwitz leave that position?

A. In the fall of 1943 the Reich Economic Ministry reorganized and all production matters were transferred to the Armament Ministry In connaction with the reorganization, the personnel of the Reic Economic Ministry was greatly curtailed. The Secretary left and so did the under-secretary von Jagwitz. Since the purpose of the

H1224-0081

S E C R E T (Funk)

Reich Economic Ministry from then on was concerned mainly with the matter of disposition of goods, the head of the Reichsgruppe Handel, Dr. Hayler, joined the Reich Economic Ministry.

Q. Was he the one who withdrew the gold from the Reichsbank?

A. No.

Q. What is his first name?

A. Franz.

Q. Was he your secretary?

A. The Ministry did not have anyone at all at the end and settled everything with the State Secretary.

Q. Who handled your personal affairs?

A. Dr. Schwedler.

Q. Who handled your personal check book?

A. Reichsbank Director Reinhardt.

Q. What was his first name?

A. He was chief of the President's office. First name was Johannes.

Q. Did he take care of making out personal checks?

A. Yes.

Q. Did you have any female secretaries?

A. I did not have a female personal secretary. There were several girls working in the internal office and also at the Ministry and Reichsbank.

Q. The tax report was made out by whom?

A. I made them out.

Q. Did you type them?

A. No, I wrote them out by hand.

Q. Did you keep a copy?

A. In Berlin there was a copy.

Q. Did you keep a copy for yourself?

A. I had only my salary and allowance payable to all Ministers - no other income.

Q. What was your salary?

A. 60,000 annually as Reichsbank President and 48,000 annually which was the usual allowance payable to every minister.

H1224-0082

S E C R E T (Funk)

Q. Is this your only income?

A. Yes.

Q. Did you get any payment from the party?

A. I never held an office in the party.

Q. Did you ever get any gifts from the party or people in the part

A. No, but I once received a donation from Hitler on my 50th birth day. Received a farm in Bavaria from the German industries and the money given by Hitler was given as an endowment to the Reichsbank.

Q. How much?

A. 1/2 million marks.

Q. Was this from the Fuehrer?

A. Yes, it was in the form of an endowment to the Reichsbank for Reichsbank employees at war.

Q. You were given the farm by the industries?

A. Yes, it was given with the permission of Hitler.

Q. What industries?

A. Reich Economic Chamber - Apex organization of the entire industry.

Q. How big was the farm?

A. 200 Morgen. 53 hectors.

Q. Is this the farm where your wife lives ?

A. She was there when the troops arrived and they told her to stay or to move to Bad Tolz so she moved to Bad Tolz. I was informed of this by American officers.

Q. Where is the farm?

A. 7 km from Bad Tolz - 40 km from Munich.

Q. Was it customary for all ministers to receive gifts from industries?

A. No, this was an exception and with special permission because for 25 years I have been active as an economist, political economist.

Q. Did you have any bank accounts?

A. In the Reichsbank at Berlin where I received my Reichsbank salary. Also in the Thysson Bank.

Q. Any other bank accounts?

A. No.

H1224-0083

S E C R E T (Funk)

Q. Did your wife have any accounts?

A. She had a small account of a few thousand marks in the Deutshhe Bank for current expenses.

Q. Have you any children?

A. No.

Q. Is your wife living alone?

A. She is living with a niece of hers who is the wife of a German Army surgeon. Also living in the home is a small girl whom they adopted. She is the daughter of a Swedish woman who was a very good friend of my wife. This woman lived for many years in Paris. On account of the unstable conditions in Paris, we had taken the little girl over so to speak.

Q. Does the woman still live in Paris?

A. I think so.

Q. Do you have any insurance?

A. Yes, with Allianz.

Q. What office?

A. Berlin

Q. Any other insurance?

A. No.

Q. Do you have any property outside of Germany?

A. No, except that as a member of the Board of the Bank for International Settlement, my Directors fees are deposited there as it is customary with the directors of that Bank. I do not know exactly what it is but it is approximately 15 to 20 thousand Swiss francs.

Q. Have you ever sent any funds abroad to other people?

A. No.

Q. Have you ever sent anything to the mother of this daughter?

A. No.

Q. To anybody else?

A. No.

Q. Have you ever lived abroad?
A. No, only when on official business.
Q. When did you go on official business?
A. Went to Basle once a month to attend a board meeting in the Bank of International Settlement. Before the war I went to negotiate a loan in Turkey. Also went to Bulgaria, Yugoslavia, Italy, Holland, Rumania, Hungary, Czechoslovakia but never went while the territories were occupied.

H1224 - 0084

S E C R E T (Funk)

Q: Did you ever go to Austria?

A: Before Anschluss visited Austria once and went for recreation.

Q: Did you go there after Anschluss?

A: I have frequently been to Vienna, Klagenfurth, Graz, Linz, Salzburg.

Q: Have you ever been to France?

A: Never after the occupation. In 1937 I went to Paris to conduct a German Cultural Act at the International Exposition. Since that time I have not visited Paris or any other part of France.

Q: Have you ever been to Holland or Belgium?

A: Not since the occupation.

Q: Ever been to Spain?

A: Never.

Q: Did you take care of remitting funds abroad for the Foreign Office?

A: No.

Q: Who did?

A: There was a special quota allowed and at its request the Foreign Office could make further deposits.

Q: Did the SS have such a fund?

A: There was a special allotment not to the SS but to the Secret Department of the SS.

Q: Who was head of that secret organization.

A: It was at first a military organization but was combined with the SD and I believe at was Obergruppenfuehrer Kaltenbrunner. The head of the former army department was Canaris.

Q: What happened to him?

A: I do not know.

Q: What happened to the other man?

A: I heard he was taken prisoner in the 7th Army area.

Q: Who was Schellenberg?

A: He was the man who handled the foreign service quota for Himmler. I knew him casually but had nothing to do with him.

Q: Did you know of a hunchback man in Berlin who had to do with foreign exchange?

A: No.

H1224 - 0085

S E C R E T (Funk)

Q: Were there any other places for the manufacture of foreign money?

A: What do you mean?

Q: Money of other countries?

A: I know nothing.

Q: You have heard about that before?

A: What kind of foreign money?

Q: Every kind, dollars, pounds, francs, etc.

A: I know nothing.

Q: Do you know anything about counterfeiting?

A: No.

Q: How much foreign exchange did the Reichsbank have lately?

A: From 7 to 8 million marks worth of foreign funds.

Q: Of all kinds?

A: I think they were mostly Swedish or Swiss. I do not know definitely.

Q: Who dealt with them?

A: Wilhelm. The fund may have been more possibly up to 30 million because 7 million I now seem to recall may be 7 million dollars. The total amount of foreign exchange amounted to what comes to approximately 30 million marks.

Q: Were there any securities in foreign companies - stocks or bonds?

A: As far as I know they were owned by individuals in Germany and were surrendered on the basis of the Four Year Plan. They could be sold abroad but I think this took place before I took office.

Q: Were they deposited abroad?

A: Yes.

Q: What procedure?

A: Individual owners got Reichsmark equivalent - Reichsbank got the dollars.

Q: These funds were deposited in the Reichsbank in what account?

A: The foreign exchange account was credited.

Q: Did you have several Devisen accounts?

A: They had a foreign exchange department which kept foreign exchange accounts.

H1224-0086

S E C R E T (Funk)

Q: Were these property of the Reich or the Reichsbank?

A: The Reichsbank.

Q: Then if the Reichsbank made foreign exchange available to the Four Years' Plan, they would owe the Reichsbank for foreign exchange?

A: They paid. The Reichsbank sold foreign exchange only against money.

Q: How could a Minister traveling abroad get foreign exchange?

A: Make request and then was paid either foreign exchange or cash credit.

Q: What about fine art purchases abroad - would you provide foreign exchange?

A: If the Reich leader Bormann requested lira for something the request was made subject to my examination.

He usually go it and the money could have been used to purchase objects of art.

Q: Was the same true of Goering?

A: Not in his case because he already had foreign exchange funds. If the Four Years' Plan notified them it requested foreign exchange and put in the equivalent in Reichsmarks, the foreign exchange had to be supplied but in every case a permit was needed from the foreign exchange branch of the Reich Economics Minister because otherwise the Reichsbank made no payment.

Q: Do you know of any foreign exchange furnished to Goering?

A: No, it was issued by the office concerned.

H1224-0087

SECRET

INTERROGATION OF FUNK

26 June 1945 (Evening)

Q: It is reported that most Nazi leaders generally have very substantial accounts abroad. What can you tell us on that subject?

A: Nothing.

Q: When did you realize that Germany was going to lose the war?

A: It is very difficult to come to the conclusion that one's country would lose the war but I began to doubt seriously Germany could win the war as soon as America entered the war. In the summer of 1943 I had many discussions with Hitler and I told Hitler about the production of the United States, but Hitler cut me short and said all that was bluff.

Q: Did you have any doubts before the summer of 1943?

A: During the time of his military victories I never believed in final victory, but I always thought that on a basis of those successes there would be negotiation for a final settlement.

Q: When did Germany's industrialists begin to doubt the outcome of the war?

A: In general the people were very careful not to say anything about that since it was very dangerous, but friends I had known for 25 years in economics began to have their doubts since America entered the war.

Q: Who were they?

A: Voegler in Vereinigte Stahlwerke. When America entered the war and we were threatened, I talked to Schacht about it.

Q: Would Schacht make a good Reichsbank president?

A: I can say you [illegible] very good acquaintance. I have known him for over 25 years and have always held him in great esteem. I also know that Schacht never said anything bad about me, even though he knew that I was not a specialist.

Q: What were the industries which you represented in your negotiations with the Nazi Party in 1931?

A: Represented is not the word. It would be better to say, which circle of industrial people urged me to enter the Nazi Party. Especially those from the mining industry Krupp in the coal industry. Kellerman, Voegler, Tengelmann, Diehn, Poetsch, also some businessman from banking contingents such as Fisher, Reinhardt, from insurance companies Schmidt, Hilgard, Winterfeld,-(Siemens), Poensgen (United Steel Works), Duisberg (I. G. Farben), Kastl, Herle (Reichs Association of Industry.)

Q: Who, besides you and Schacht were negotiating with industry for support of the Nazi Party prior to 1933?

A: Secretary of State Keppler. He worked in the Cologne area wit Schroeder. Heinrichbauer in the Ruhr industry (Essen). That's all.

Q: What form of cooperation did the business men take? Did they give you money, advertising or what?

A: As all other parties, the Nazi Party was supported with money by the industrialists. In contrast to other parties, I don't think that it was much more than a couple of million.

H1224-0088

H1224 - 0089

S E C R E T

INTERROGATION OF FUNK
26 June 1945 (Evening)

Q: About 1933 we have been informed that certain industrialists attended a meeting in the home of GOERING before the election in March. Do you know anything about this?

A: I was at the meeting. Money was not demanded by GOERING but by SCHACHT. Hitler left the room, then SCHACHT made a speech asking for money for the election. I was only there as an impartial observer, since I was friendly with the industrialists.

Q: Was this the first meeting of this kind that you attended?

A: Concerning money, this was the first.

Q: Who was present when SCHACHT made the speech?

A: Kauert, the nephew of Kildorf, Tengelmann, Winterfeld, Schnitzler, (I.G. Farben) and quite a big circle that I don't remember very well.

Q: How many such meetings were there in 1933?

A: I know only about this one.

Q: Have you attended any other meetings at any later time?

A: There was no other one that I know of.

Q: When you said that devisen and gold in Germany were 500 million, what price did you fix on the gold per kilogram?

A: 3,000 marks, the regular price per kilo.*

Q: What value did you place on the mark in giving us figures on Germany's foreign exchange?

A: The official price - 2.25 per dollar.

* = The actual price was 2,784 marks, according to Thoms, in charge of the precious metals department of the Reichsbank.

H1224 - 0090

Document 2836-PS
OFFICE US CHIEF OF COUNSEL

OFFICES AND POSITIONS HELD BY DEFENDANT HERMANN GORING

It is hereby agreed that Hermann Goring, a defendant in the action pending before the International Military Tribunal, was appointed or elected, as the case may be, to the positions and held the offices entitled thereto during the time as set forth below:

1. Party member (1922-1945)
2. Supreme Leader of the SA (1923 - Nov 1923)
3. Member of the Reichstag (1928)
4. President of the Reichstag (1932)
5. Prussian Minister of the Interior (1933-1934)
6. Prussian Prime Minister (1933-1945)
7. Prussian Chief of Secret State Police (1933-1936) (1934 an Himmler)
8. Prussian Chief of State Counsel (1933-1945)
9. Plenipotentiary of the Four-Year Plan (1936-1945)
10. Reichsminister for Air (1933-1945)
11. Commander in Chief of the Air Force (1935-1945)
12. President of the Cabinet Counsel for the Defense of the Reichs (1939-1945)
13. Member of the Secret Cabinet Counsel (1938-1945)
14. Reichsmarshall (1939-1945)
15. Successor Designate to Hitler (1939-1945)
16. Head of Reichswerke Hermann Goering (1937-1945)
17. Head of Gestapo in Prussia (1933-1934)

CERTIFICATE

I hereby certify that the above is true this ____ day of November 1945.

/s/ H. Goring
DEFENDANT

/s/ Dr. Stahmer
ATTORNEY FOR DEFENDANT

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 2875-PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL
Reichsgesetzblatt, Part I, Page 1580, distributed 14 Nov. 1938.

DECREE RELATING TO THE EXCLUSION OF JEWS FROM THE GERMAN ECONOMIC LIFE OF NOVEMBER 12, 1938

Verordnung zur Ausschaltung der Judenaus dem Deutschen Wirtschaftsleben, vom 12 November 1938

Pursuant to the decree for the execution of the Four-Year Plan of 18 October 1936 (Reichsgesetzblatt I, p. 887), the following is being decreed:

Section 1

(1) Jews (Sec. 5 of the First Decree relating to the Reich Citizenship Law of 14 November 1935-Reichsgesetzbl. I, p. 1333) are excluded from the operation of individual retail shops, exporting firms, sales agencies (Bestell Kontoren), as well as the independent operation of a trade, effective 1 January.

(2) Furthermore, effective the same day, they are prohibited to offer merchandise or business services on markets of all types, fairs or exhibitions, to advertise for such or accept orders for such.

(3) Jewish business establishments (Third decree pursuant to the Reich Citizenship Law of 14 June 1938, Reichsgesetzbl. I, p. 627) which are being operated in violation of this decree are to be closed down by the police.

Section 2

(1) Effective 1 January 1939, a Jew can no longer be manager of an establishment as defined by the law relating to the organization of national labor of 20 January 1934 (Reichsgesetzbl. I, p. 45).

(2) If a Jew is employed as an executive in a business enterprise, he may be dismissed with 6 weeks' notice. After the expiration of this notice, all claims of the employee derived from the denounced contract become invalid, especially claims for retirement or dismissal pay.

Section 3

(1) No Jew may be a member of a cooperative (Genossenschaft).

(2) Jewish members of cooperatives will be separated effective 31 December 1938. No special notice is required.

Section 4

The Minister of Economics is empowered to issue regulations necessary to the implementation of this decree with the approval of the Reichs Ministers concerned. He may allow exceptions where, due to the transfer of Jewish business establishments into non-Jewish hands or due to the liquidation of Jewish business establishments or in special cases, this is required in order to safeguard the require-

H1224 - 0091

ments (of the public.-T)

The Plenipotentiary for the Four Year Plan
Goering
Field Marshal

Berlin, November 12, 1938.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT No. 2875-PS

19 November 1945

I, TIBOR W. SCHONFELD, Civilian, A.E.F. Permit 51029, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages, and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document 2875-PS.

TIBOR W. SCHONFELD,
Civilian,
A.E.F. Permit 51029.

H1224 - 0092

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 2949 PS
OFFICE OF US CHIEF OF COUNSEL

TOP SECRET

Reichs Ministry
for Aviation

14 March 1938

Institute for Research

B Nr. F....V. 1106/38g R

To the General Fieldmarshal

Fieldmarshal

Enclosed I submit, as ordered,-the copies of your telephone conversations.

/s/ HIHN

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2949-PS, Cover Page

21 November 1945

I, GOETZ MAYER, T/5 33812169, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a correct and true translation of Document No. 2949-PS, cover page.

GOETZ MAYER,
T/5 33812169

2949-PS

H1224 - 0093

Notes Concerning the Telephone Conversations between the Fieldmarshall (f) and the Minister Seyss-Inquart (s).

14:45 Phone call from F.

F: How do you do, doctor? My brother-in-law, is he with you?

S: No.

Thereupon the conversation took approximately the following turn:

F: How are things with you? Have you resigned, or do you have any news?

S: The Chancellor has concelled the elections for Sunday, and therefore he has put S and the other gentlemen in a difficult situation. Besides having called off the elections, extensive precautionary measures are being ordered, among others curfew at 8 PM.

F: Replied that in his opinion the measures taken by Chancellor Schuschnig were not satisfactory in any respect. At this moment he could not commit himself officially. F. will take a clear stand very shortly. In calling off the elections, he could see a postponement only, not a change of the present situation which had been brought about by the behavior of the Chancellor Schuschnigg in breaking the Berchtesgadener agreement.
Thereupon a conversation took place between F. and the Fuehrer.
Afterwards F. phoned again S. This conversation was held at 15:05.

F: Told S that Berlin did not agree whatsoever with the decision, made by Chancellor Schuschnigg since he did not enjoy any more the confidence of our government because he had broken the Buchtesgadener agreement, and therefore further confidence in his future actions did not exist. Consequently, the National Minister, S. and the others, are being requested to immediately hand in their resignation to the Chancellor, and also to ask the Chancellor to resign. F. added that if after a period of one hour no report had come through the assumption would be made that S. would no more be in the position to phone. That would mean that the gentlemen had handed in their resignations. S. was then told to send the telegram to the Fuehrer as agreed upon.
As a matter of course, an immediate commission by the Federal President for S. to form a new cabinet would follow Schuschnig's resignation.
Telephone message by S. at 15:55.

S. informed the Fieldmarshal that the Chancellor Schuschnig was on his way to Federal President Miklas in order to hand in his resignation, as well as that of the whole cabinet.
Asked by F. if with this the commission to form a new cabinet intended for S. was secure.
S. said that he would let F. know not later than 17:30.

F: Replied emphatically that this, besides the resignation of the Chancellor Schuschnig, was an absolutely firm demand

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2949-PS, Part A 21 November 1945

I, GOETZ MAYER, T/5 33812169, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversar with the English and German languages; and that the above is a correct and true translation of Document No. 2949-PS, Part A.

GOETZ MAYER,
T/5 33812169

H1224 - 0094

H1224-0095

Telephone Conversation Between Field Marshal Goering, Reichchancellery, with the German Embassy, Vienna, 1700 hours, March 11, 1938.

Dombrowski: I have to report the following. Seyss-Inquart has talked to the Austrian Chancellor until 1630 hours but he is not in a position to dissolve the Cabinet by 1730 hours because it is technically impossible.

Goering: By 1930 hours the Cabinet must be formed and several measures must have been taken. Is Seyss-Inquart there?

Dombrowski: He is not here just now. He is in conference. That is why he sent me here to telephone you.

Goering: What is the message? Repeat exactly.

Dombrowski: His message is that he is not in a position .... (Goering interrupts, What does he have to say?) He says that he has no hesitation to allow the party formations to come in now.

Goering: All that is not to the point. I want to know what is going on? Did he tell you that he is now the Chancellor?

Dombrowski: Yes.

Goering: As just transmitted to you?

Dombrowski: Yes.

Goering: Good, go on. What time can he form the Cabinet?

Dombrowski: Possibly by 9:18.

Goering: The Cabinet must be formed by 7:30.

Dombrowski: By 7:30.

Goering: For that purpose Keppler is now going to arrive.

Dombrowski: To continue, the SA and SS have already been organized as auxiliary police.

Goering: (Goering repeats the last sentence.) The demand of legalizing the Party must also be made.

Dombrowski: All right.

Goering: All right, with all of its formations, SA, SS, HJ.

Dombrowski: Yes, Field Marshal, only one thing, that the formations which are now outside the country will not come at this time.

Goering: They will only come during the next few days.

Dombrowski: Yes. He thinks after the plebiscite has been accomplished.

Goering: No, no, what plebiscite?

Dombrowski: Yes. He believes that the program then established will be carried out by Hitler.

Goering: One moment, As to the plebiscite, there are certain special things, aren't there. Anyway, this plebiscite tomorrow is to be cancelled.

H1224 - 0096

Dombrowski: That's already been taken care of. That's now out of the question.

Goering: Good, the Cabinet must been entirely National Socialist.

Dombrowski: Good, that also has been settled, by 7:30 that must be ....

Goering: (Interrupting) That must be reported by 7:30, and Keppler will bring you several names to be incorporated.

Dombrowski: Very well. One thing Seyss-Inquart requests regarding the organizations now in emigration are to come in later and not now.

Goering: All right, we can talk about that .... That will take a few days anyway.

Dombrowski: That is his request.

Goering: Good.

Dombrowski: That is all right then.

Goering: Yes, they will not come immediately. About that we will have a special talk.

Dombrowski: Very well, General Field Marshal.

Goering: Now to go on. The Party has definitely been legalized?

Dombrowski: But that is .... it isn't necessary to even discuss that.

Goering: With all of its organizations.

Dombrowski: With all of its organizations within this country.

Goering: In uniform?

Dombrowski: In uniform.

Goering: Good.

Dombrowski: calls attention to the fact that the SA and SS have already been on duty for one-half hour which means everything is all right.

Goering: Regarding the plebiscite, the Special Envoy will be coming down and will confer with you about the kind of plebiscite that is to be.

Dombrowski: Well then, we have time in that matter.

Goering: Yes, there is time. Seyss-Inquart is of the opinion that the relationship Germany-Austria must be put on a new basis.

Dombrowski: What did he mean by that? Well he means that the independence of Austria should be maintained but that everything else should be ruled on a National Socialist basis.

Goering: That will be a natural result. Tell him the units must come down in the next few days. That's in the interest of Seyss-Inquart, namely that he receives first-class units which are absolutely at his disposal.

Dombrowski: About that he will talk with you himself.

Goering: All right, he can do that.

H1224-0097

Dombrowski: So that he knows who is coming down but we have a few days for that.

Goering: Yes, and by 7:30 the report about the formed Cabinet.

Dombrowski: He'll have that by then.

Goering: And by 7:30 he also must talk with the Fuehrer and as to the Cabinet, Keppler will bring you the names. One thing I have forgotten, Fishbeck must have the Department of Economy and Commerce.

Dombrowski: That's understood.

Goering: Kaltenbrunner is to have the Department of Security and Bahr is to have the armed forces. The Austrian Army is to be taken by Seyss-Inquart himself and you know all about the Justice Department.

Dombrowski: Yes, yes.

Goering: Give me the name.

Dombrowski: Well, your brother-in-law. Isn't that right?

Goering: Yes?

Dombrowski: Yes.

Goering: That's right and then also Fishbeck.

Dombrowski: Yes, that is taken care of.

Goering: Be careful, the daily press must leave immediately and our our people.

Dombrowski: Well, as to the man whom you mentioned with regard to the Security Department.

Goering: Kaltenbrunner. Yes, he is to get the Security Department and then mark this, immediately the press representatives. (They both talk at the same time, Dombrowski says several times, "Yes".) All right, at 1730 hours, no at 7:30--goodby.

M. (Much?): (Much comes to the telephone and calls Goering's attention to the fact that Keppler will not arrive until 5:40. Goering tells Much that he has just given the names to Dombrowski over the telephone.)

M: Requests to be allowed to support the suggestion that the Party formations now abroad would not be let loose until this was called for from "here".

Goering: Yes, no, the Fuehrer wants to ... that he will tell to Seyss-Inquart in person ... those are the most disciplined and best units, they will come immediately under the command of Seyss-Inquart so that he has the best possible support.

M: Yes, but as to the foreign political situation.....

Goering: (interrupting) That will be handled. The foreign political aspect will be handled exclusively by Germany in this direction. Furthermore, Seyss-Inquart and the Fuehrer will talk about this matter, that will take quite some time anyway, until they can be dispatched. Anyway they won't come today or tomorrow or the day after tomorrow.

H1224 -0098

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT 2949-PS, PART C

23 November 1945

I, GERARD SCHAEFER, 2nd Lt., Inf., 01332102, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a correct and true translation of Document 2949-PS, Part C.

GERARD SCHAEFER
2nd Lieutenant, Inf.
01332102

Transcript of Telephone Conversation between Goering and Dr. Ullrich Vienna. Berlin-Vienna

17:20-17:25 on 11 March 1938

U: I was just looking for the gentleman, in order to tell him myself the same thing.

G: Look, Franz, you take over the Ministry of Justice, and corresponding to the wish of the Fuehrer, you also take over for the time being the Ministry for Foreign Affairs, later on someone else will replace you in this.

U: Please, there is something else. Fischbach (?) intends, before accepting his appointment, to the Fuehrer --

G: He should not do that at this moment, it won't be necessary tat all.

U: Then he will phone you, I also am against it.

G: Yes, let him call me. There is no time for it. Also he cannot afford to get for himself special favors, and be responsible now before he has to act history. With the Federal Chancellory, he should still reserve for himself the department of trade, Kaltenbrunner (ph) Security, you the department of Justice, and for the time being, the Foreign Office.

U: Does he know about it already?

G: The latter he does not yet know, I shall tell him that myself. He has to form the cabinet immediately, he shall not fly over here, because the Cabinet has to be formed till 7:30, otherwise it's all for nothing. Otherwise, things will take their own course, and very different decisions will be made then.

U: That is understood, I shall take care of it immediately.

G: And then another important factor which I forgot to mention before, but that is rather a matter of course. The Reds, who were given arms yesterday, have to be disarmed in the quickest way and just as well in a ruthless manner, that is rather a matter of course. Also make sure that he gives me a ring immediately, he shall not fly, there is no sense in doing so. Just a moment. He should call me under the following number, 125224. (Here the conversation is interrupted) The conversation was interrupted twice, in the beginning, and at the end. It seemed that Vienna was to blame for the interruption

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2949-PS, Part D

21 November 1945

I, GOETZ MAYER, T/5 33812169, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a correct and true translation of Document No. 2949-PS, Part D.

GOETZ MAYER,
T/5 33812169

H1224-0099

Transcript of Telephone conversation between Goering and Seyss-Inquart 11 March 1938

Wien-Berlin, 17:26-17:31

S: The situation is like that: The Federal President (Bundespraesident) has accepted the resignation, but his point of view is, that no one but the Chancellor is to be blamed for Berchtesgaden and its consequences, and therefore he'd like ... but he would like to entrust a man like Ender (?) with the Chancellorship. At this moment our own gentlemen (?) are in conference with him, Klawotschnik (??) and so on, and report on the situation.

G: Yes, now look here: This will change the whole situation. The Federal President or some one else has to be told that this is entirely different from what we were told. Gewotschnik (?) said upon your order that you had been given the chancellorship.

S: I myself? When did he say that?

G: Just an hour ago. He said that you had the chancellorship and that also the Party had been restored, SA, SS had already taken over police duties etc.

S: No, that is not so. I suggested to the Federal President to entrust the chancellorship to me, usually it takes 3 to 4 hours. As for the Party we still do not have the possibility to restore it but we have ordered the SA and SS to take over police duties (Ordnungsdienst)

G: Well, that won't do! Under no circumstances! the matter is in progress now therefore, please, the Federal President has to be informed immediately that he has to turn the powers of the Federal Chancellor over to you and to accept the Cabinet like it was arranged; you as Federal Chancellor and the Army --

S: (Interrupted him) Fieldmarshal, just now Muchlmann who was there has arrived. May he report to you?

G: Yes.

Dr. Muchlmann (?) takes over the conversation with G. -

M: The situation that the Federal President still refuses persistently to give his consent and asks for official diplomatic action by the Reich. Now we three National Socialists - Rodenstock (?), Dreila (?) and I went to speak to him personally in order to make him understand that in this hopeless situation only one thing can be done by him: namely to say yes. He would not even let us see him. So far it looks as if he were not willing to give in.

G: (short conversation) (give me S.)
S.I. continues the conversation.

G: Now remember the following: You go immediately together with Lt. General Muff and tell the Federal President that if the conditions which are known to you are not accepted immediately, the troops who are already stationed at and advancing to the frontier will march in tonight along the whole line, and Austria will cease to exist. Lt. General Muff should go with you and demand to be admitted for conference immediately. Please, do inform us immediately about Miklas' position. Tell him, there is no time now for any joke. Just thru the false report we received before action was delayed, but now the situation is that tonight the invasion will begin from all the corners of Austria. The invasion will be stopped and the troops will be held at the border only if we are informed by 7:30 that Miklas has entrusted you with the Federal Chancellorship. (it follows a sentence which is broken up) ------
M. does not matter whatever it might be, the immediate restoration of the Party with all its organizations --- (again interruption) and then call

H1224-0100

out all the National Socialists all over the country. They should now be in the streets. So remember, report must be given till 7:30. Lt. General Muff is supposed to come along with you. I shall inform him immediately. If Miklas could not understand it in 4 hours, we shall make him understand it now in 4 minutes.

S: All right.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2949-PS, Part E

21 November 1945

I, GOETZ MAYER, T/5 33812169, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversan with the English and German languages; and that the above is a correct and true translation of Document No. 2949-PS, Part E.

GOETZ MAYER,
T/5 33812169

H1224-0101

H1224-0102

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO 2949-PS, Part H
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL.

H, Transcript of Telephone- Conversation between Goering and Keppler and Lt.General Muff, instead of Muff, Keppler answered the phone. 11 March 1938 Wien--Berlin, 12.28 -18-34

K, I just spoke to Muff. The Muff action was going on at the same time as mine was, so I did not know about it. Muff just saw the President, but he also refused. I shall call once more to find out whether or not the President wants to speak to me at this last minute.

G, Where is Muff now?.

K, Muff just came down, his action was unsuccessful.

G. But, what does he have to say?

K, Well, he would not agree with it.

G. Well, then Seyss-Inquart has to dismiss him; just go upstairs again and just tell him plainly that S.I. shall call on the National-Socialists guards and in 5 minutes the troops will march in by my order.

A. (Muff is called to the phone) Muff (?) does not answer by name.

M. It is a fact that Schushnigg tried to prove to the world, that the National Socialists do not have any majority, and only by the threat of German arms .....

the conversation is interupted for about 3 minutes, interuptions comes from Vienna G, remains at the phone

Unknown voice (male)

U. Hallo

G. Is that Secretary of the State Keppler?

U. No, he is just in conference with the Federal Chancellor.

G. With the Federal President;

U. No, with the Federal Chamcellor, they are all together, Federal President and Federal Chancellor.

G. Who is speaking?

U. Fehsemeier (?) Adjutant of .....

G. Has he gone upstairs ?

U. Yes, just now.

G. Who is with him, upstairs ?

U. The Federal President, the Federal Chancellor, and Mayor Schmidt.

G. Yes, I hold on,- Fehsemeier, you have to hurry, we have just 3 minutes left;

U. Yes, I know:

Goering waits a while at the phone.

Cont:

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO. 2949-PS, Part H

K: Comes first to the phone, "Well, I just saw the President again, but he has not given his consent

G: He refused : Well, then Seyss shall call immediately

K: He come to the phone immediatley.

Seyss Inquart come to the telephone.

G: Well, how do we stand?

S. Please, Fieldmarshal, yes.

G: Well, what is going on?

S: Yes, ah, the Federal President sticks to his old view-point. Now the Federal Chancellor(double name, not to be understood clearly -------- Weserick (?) went to see Schuschnigg in order to change his mind. He himself uses all his influence, but there is no decision made yet:.

G. But do you think it possible that we shall come to a decision in the next few minutes.

S. Well, the conversation cannot take longer than 5 to 10 minutes, it will not take any longer, I guess.

G. Listen, so I shall wait a few more minutes, till he comes back then you inform me via Blitz conversation in the Reich Chancery- as usually, but it has to be done fast. I hardly can justify it as a matter of fact. I am not entitled to do so; if it cannot be done, then you have to take over the power alright ?

S. But if he threatens?

G. Yes.

S. Well, I see, then we shall be ready (antreten)

G. Call me via Blitz.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2949-PS, Part H

21 November 1945

I, GOETZ MAYER, T/5 33812169, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a correct and true translation of Document No. 2949-PS, Part H.

GOETZ MAYER,
T/5 33812169

H1224-0104

Transcipt of telephone conversation between Seyss-Inquart and Goering 11, March 38, Wien-Berlin 19-57 20-03

S. Dr. Schuschnigg will give the news over the radio that the Reich Goverment has given an ultimatum.

G. I heard about it.

S. And the Goverment itself has abdicated, General Schiwaski is in command of the Military forces and he will draw the troops back. The gentlemen pointed out that they are waiting for the troops to march in.

G. Well, they were appointed by you?

S. No.

G. Did you dismiss them from their office, ?

S. No, nobody was dismissed from his office, but the Goverment itself has pulled back and let matters take their course.

G. And you were not commissioned, it was refused?.

S. Now like before it was refused. they expect that they are taking a chance with the invasion and expect that, if the invasion will actually take place the executive power will be transferred to other people

G. O K. I shall give the order to march in and then you make sure, that you get the power, Notify the leading people about the following which I shall tell you now: Everyone who offers resistance or organizes resistance, will immediately, be subjected to our court -martial, the court-martial of our invading troops. Is that clear?.

S. Yes

G. Including leading personalities, it doesnot make any difference.

S. Yes, they have given the order, not to offer any resistance.

G. Yes, it does not matter: the Federal President did not authorize you, and that also can be considered as resistance.

S. Yes,

G. Well, now you are officially authorized.

S. Yes.

G. Well, good luck, Heil Hitler.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2949-PS, Part I

21 November 1945

I, GOETZ MAYER, T/5 33812169, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a correct and true translation of Document No. 2949-PS, Part I.

GOETZ MAYER,
T/5 33812169

H1224-0105

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO. 2949-PS, Part J

Transcript of Telephone-Conversation between Goering and Lt.General Muff
Goering himself adresses Muff who till an hour ago Lt.General as General
German Embassy, Vienna.

G. Tell Seyss-Inquart the following: As we understand it the Goverment has abdicated but he himself remained. So he should continue to stay in office, and carry out necessary measures in the name of the Goverment. The invasion is going to happen now, and we shall state that every one who put up any resistance has to face the consequences. But the Austrian organizations may join us any time, rather they may seek protection from the German Wehrmacht. I should try to avoid chaos.

M. Seyss, will do so, he is already making a speech:

G. But he should take over now the Goverment, and should carry through things quietly. The best will be if Miklas resigns,

M. Yes, but he won't! It was very dramatic, I spoke to him almost 15 minutes He declared that he will under no circumstances yield to force

G. So- he will not give into to force,

M. He does not yield to force.

G. What does this mean? so he justs wants to be kicked out?

M. Yes, he does not want to move.

G. Well, with 14 children one cannot move as one likes. Well, tell Seyss that he'll take over.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2949-PS, Part J

21 November 1945

I, GOETZ MAYER, T/5 33812169, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a correct and true translation of Document No. 2949-PS, Part J.

GOETZ MAYER
T/5 33812169

Transcript of Telephone Conversation between Goering and Keppler
Berlin-Vienna, 11 March 1938

20:48-20:54

K: I want to inform you shortly: Federal President Miklas has refused to do anything. But nevertheless, the government has ceased to function. I spoke to Schuschnig and he said they had laid down their functions and we had to act accordingly. (Was the last sentence repeated) They have laid down their functions, and Schuschnig himself said that we had to act and (consequently?) Buhler (Buhler or Buhle - very unclear) has spoken to Seyss-Inquart over the phone, he (?)who is still in Office as Secretary of the Interior, spoke over the radio.

G: (interrupts) I have read that. Continue.

K: The old Government has ordered the Army not to put up any resistance. Therefore, shooting is not allowed.

G: OK, I do not give a darn.

K: Pretty soon Landesleiter Kloose (?) will deliver a speech over the radio, and now (?) I want to ask you if not a prominent personality in Berlin wants to add a few words for the Austrian people?

G: Well, I do not know yet. Listen: The main thing is, that Inquart takes over all powers of the Government, that he keeps the radio stations occupied ...

K: Well, we represent the Government now.

G: Yes, that's it. You are the Government. Listen carefully: The following telegram should be sent here by Seyss-Inquart: Take the notes

"The provisional Austrian Government which after the dismissal of the Schuschnig Government, considers it its task to establish peace and order in Austria, sends to the German Government the urgent request, to support it in its task and to help it to prevent bloodshed. For this purpose if asks the German Government to send German troops as soon as possible."

K: Well, SA and SS are marching through the streets, but everything is quick. Everything has collapsed with the professional groups (?).

G: Now listen: He has to guard the borders, so that they cannot disappear with their fortunes.

K: Yes, indeed.

G: And then, - above all, he also is responsible for the Foreign policy.

K: Yes, We still do need some one for this post.

G: Well, that does not matter. Now, Seyss-Inquart has to take it over and he has to appoint a few people. He should call upon the people we recommended to him. He should form now a provisional government. It is absolutely unimportant what the Federal President may have to say.

K: Yes, they are not doing anything!

G: No, no, he has to form the Government right now like he intended to do, and he should inform the people abroad about it.

K: Yes.

G: He is the only one who still has Power in Austria.

K: Yes.

H1224-0106

G: Then our troops will cross the border today.

K: Yes.

G: Well. And he should send the telegram as soon as possible.

K: Will send the telegram to S.I. in the office of the Federal Chancery.

G: Please, show him the text of the telegram and do tell him that we are asking him - well, he does not even have to send the telegram - all he needs to do, is to say: agreed.

K: Yes.

G: Either call me at the Fuehrer's or at my place. Well, good luck Heil Hitler!

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2949-PS, Part L

21 November 1945

I, GOETZ MAYER, T/5 33812169, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a correct and true translation of Document No. 2949-PS, Part L.

GOETZ MAYER,
T/5 33812169

H1224-0107

Transcript of Telephone Conversation between Wilhelm Keppler and Mr. Dietrich, Berlin-Vienna, 2154, 11 March 1939.

General Bodenschatz wants to speak to Keppler. Dr. Dietrich Berlin
Keppler Wien

Dietrich: I need the telegram urgently.

Keppler: Tell the General Field Marshal that Seyss-Inquart agrees.

Dietrich: This is marvelous. Thank you.

Keppler: Listen to the radio. News will be given.

Dietrich: Where?

Keppler: From Vienna.

Dietrich: So Seyss-Inquart agrees?

Keppler: Jawohl!

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2949-PS, Part M

21 November 1945

I, GOETZ MAYER, T/5 33812169, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a correct and true translation of Document No. 2949-PS, Part M.

GOETZ MAYER
T/5 33812169

H1224-0108

Transcript of Telephone Conversation between Adolf Hitler and Prince Philipp von Hessen, 11 March 1938

FL ZUERICH 22:25-22:29

H; I have just come back from Palazzo Venezia. The Duce accepted the whole thing in a very friendly manner. He sends you his regards. He had been informed from Austria, Schuschnig gave him the news. He had then said it would be a complete impossibility, it would be a bluff, such a thing could not be done. So he was told that it was unfortunately arranged thus and it could not be changed any more. Then Mussolini said that Austria would be immaterial to him.

F: Then, please, tell Mussolini, I will never forget him for this.

H: Yes.

F: Never, never, never, whatever happens. I am still ready to make a quite different agreement with him.

H: Yes, I told him that, too.

F: As soon as the Austrian affair has been settled, I shall be ready to go with him through thick and thin, nothing matters.

H: Yes, my Fuehrer.

F: Listen, I shall make any agreement - I am no longer in fear of the terrible position which would have existed militarily in case we had gotten into a conflict. You may tell him that I do thank him ever so much, never, never shall I forget that.

H: Yes, my Fuehrer.

F: I will never forget it, whatever will happen. If he should ever need any help or be in any danger, he can be convinced that I shall stick to him whatever might happen, even if the whole world were against him.

H: Yes, my Fuehrer.

F: Well

H: Then, I would like to say that this afternoon the French envoy asked for a conference with Count Ciano, by order of his Government on account of the Austria affair. But Count Ciano refused to see him and thereupon the envoy stated that they have to desregard any further oral negotiations with Italy.

F: Yes, I thank you.

H: My Fuehrer, also I wanted to ask you do you want me to stay here, or shall I come back at once tomorrow?

F: You may still stay there.

H: Shall I send the machine back ?

F: No, you may still keep it there.

H: Yes, I shall report again tomorrow.

F: Yes, I thank you.

H1224-0109

H1224-0110

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2949-PS, Part N

21 November 1945

I, GOETZ MAYER, T/5 33812169, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages and that the above is a correct and true translation of Document No. 2949-PS, Part N.

GOETZ MAYER,
T/5 33812169

H1224-0111

Telephone Conversation between
Goering and Reich Minister for Foreign Affairs, von Ribbentrop
13 March 1938, London
9:15 - 9:55

G: As you know the Fuehrer has entrusted me with the administration of the current government procedures (Führung der Regierungsgeschäfte). And therefore I wanted to inform you. There is overwhelming joy in Austria, that you can hear over the radio.

R: Yes, it is fantastic, isn't it?

G: Yes, the last march into the Rhineland is completely overshadowed The Fuehrer was deeply moved, when he talked to me last night. You must remember it was the first time that he saw his homeland again. Now, I mainly want to talk about political things. Well, this story we had given an ultimatum, that is just foolish gossip. From the very beginning the National Socialist ministers and the representatives of the people (Volksreferenkn) have presented theultimatum. Later on, more and more prominent people of the Movement Party participated, and as a natural result, the Austrian National Socialist ministers asked us to back them up, so they would not be completely beatn up again and be subjected to terror and civil war. Then we told them we would not allow Schuschnigg to provoke a civil war, under no circumstances. Whether by Schuschnigg's direct order, or without consent the Communists and the Reds had been armed, and were alrdy making demonstrations, which were photographed with "Heil Moscu" and so on, naturally, all these facts caused some danger for cher-Neustadt. Then you have to consider that Schuschnigg made his speeches, telling them the Fatherlandish Front (Vaterlandische Front) would fight to its last man, one could not know that they would catulate like that and therefore Seyss-Inquart who already had taken over the government asked us to march in immediately. Before we had ready marched up to the frontier since we could not know whether there would be a civil war or not. These are the actual facts which can be proved by documents. This way the people may..... The following is interesting: The absolute complete enthusiasm for the National Socialism which is surprising even to us. And the reason for that is: About 80% among the members of the Fatherlandish Front were National Socialists, but these people had to join the Fatherlandish Front, otherwise they were subjected to terror, mainly economically, in that everybody who did not belong to the Fatherlandish Front lost his job so the Fatherlandish Front really seemed to be something. But actually, these were all our people which is just being discovered now, and that explains the whole situation, which did even surpass all our expectations. At least we thought..... but with the one exception of the Jews and a part of those deep black ones, there is no one against us.

R: So it seems that all Austria is on our side.

G: Well, let me tell you, if there were an election tomorrow, - I already told S-I he should invite the representatives of the democratic powers - they could convince themselves that this was really an election carried through on a democratic basis - and we shall have 90% votes in our favour. Absolutely! Only now one gets the reports how these people have been mistreated; I believe it is absolutely necessary that serious people from England and France should be asked to come over here and to watch what is actually going on. The biggest trick which ever had been played was done here.

R: I believe that this conviction will grow here. During these last days I had a few conversations not to forget the one I had the day before yesterday. Things are like that: at the moment they had their big surprise were.....later on I shall tell you more but generally

H1224-0112

people act very sensibly. The day before yesterday I told Halifax - who was with me quite a long time - that the whole English public opinion knows exactly what is going on in Austria.

G: There is something else I started to say: We cannot afford to have any elections as long as our troops are stationed there, they should be back first. Besides, during the next few days our troops will return. No one could stop that, any military man knows that, when such a thing is running, when the order is given to start the matter takes its course, till the troops have reached their destination, and till they are ready to be shipped away and returned. As I was informed yesterday, one figures with 5 - 6 days. This is now nothing but a friendship march. Nothing has happened, not one shot was fired. Still we have to take over Vienna and Wiener-Neustadt. But I am convinced that will be an easy job - as it was all over. But no one could have expected that. Just remember the speeches of these people. They always shouted these were fanatics, determined... to fight for Austria, for her independence, and soon, that there was nothing behind it, no one could suspect. Officials, for instance, reported and the higher ups just as well as the smaller ones and the ones in the ranks in between, they all told the same story: "You cannot imagine if we only once had mentioned that we were sympathizing with you we would have been put ruthlessly into the streets with our families." It was such a brutal system! They only could fool the world by covering all their deeds with the word "christianity", they were so slimy. But they were the most brutal days that ever did exist. I have to say I take my hat off to those

H1224-0113

in Russia, at least they are honest. On top of it, these people here were infamous. There they did not behead people - well, some of them they did behead - but here they killed them economically, they ruined them. One thing I want to say: it is claimed that we overpowered the Austrian people, and took away their independence, then one should admit at least that just one little part of it was put under pressure - not by us - and that was the government which existed on such a small basis. The Austrian people have only been freed by now. I would just suggest to Halifax or to some real serious people whom he trusts to just send them over, so they may have a picture of what is going on here. They shall travel through the country, then they will see everything. Besides I also want to point out, yesterday, you know, if there..... they were saying the most serious things, war, and so on, it made me laugh because where would one find such an unscrupulous statesman who would send again millions of people to death only because 2 German brother-nations - - - -

R. Yes, this is absolutely ridiculous; one realizes that over here; I do think one knows pretty well over here what is going on.

G. Mr. Ribbentrop, I would call attention to one fact particularly: What state in the whole world will get hurt by our union? Do we take away anything from any other state? If the states say: well, that is against our interests! What kind of interest did these states have? They only could have one interest, to create hostile feelings against Germany. The percentage of minorities does not exceed more than 0.1% over all Austria. All the people are German, all the people speak German. Well, not one single state is involved in it. And the states which as the only ones might have an interest. You may say that, Italy and Yugoslavia and Hungary because a few hundred thousand Germans are living there - these who could say that they might feel etc. ... they actually do not feel that they are threatened. Therefore, it is ridiculous, if France.... Besides I do want to point out that the Czechoslovakian Minister came to see me yesterday and he explained, that the rumor Czechoslovakia had mobilized was taken out of the thin air and they would be satisfied with one word from me that I would not undertake the slightest thing against Czechoslovakia.

R. Of this the embassy was already informed the day before yesterday. He himself called here yesterday and told Woermann so.

G. There upon I said the following: The German troops are supposed to stay away 15-20 Km from the border, on their march through Austria, and north of the Danube in the whole sector only one dissolved battalion was to march merely so that these villages can share in the joy and pleasure. Today the advance does no more take place according to military principles but all over the roads smaller columns are marching because every village wants to see a German soldier.

R. Now let me tell you this: Later on I want to take a plane. I paid my farewell visit to everyone already the day before yesterday. The embassy takes care of all business. I do not have any more authority.

G. But the Fuehrer thought because you are just there that you could inform the people what is really going on. Above all, that it is absolutely wrong to think Germany had given an ultimatum.

R. I have already spoken very openly with Halifax and Chamberlain. There is no doubt about it. Only the fact that the newspapers --- people start to ask questions and it does not seem to be right if I still remain here, it would look strange, somehow.

G. No, no, I think so, too. Only, I did not know if you spoke already to these people. I want that you once more, - but no, - not at all once more, - but generally speaking - tell the following to Halifax and Chamberlain: It is not correct that Germany has given any ultimatum. This is a lie by Schuschnigg, because the ultimatum was presented to him by S-I, -

H1224-0114

Gleise-Horstenau and Jury. Furthermore, it is not true that we have presented an ultimatum to the Federal President, but it also was given by the others and as far as I know just a military-attache came along, asked by S-I, because of a technical question; he was supposed to ask whether in case S-I would ask for the support of German troops, Germany would grant this request. Furthermore I want to state that S-I asked us expressively - by phone as by telegram to send troops because he did not know about the situation in Wiener- Neustadt, Vienna, and so on; because arms had been distributed there. And then he could not know how the Fatherlandish front might react since they always had had such a big mouth.

R. Mr. Goering, tell me, how is the situation in Vienna, is everything settled yet?

G. Yes. Yesterday I landed hundreds of airplanes with some companies, in order to secure the airfield and they were received with joy. Today the advance unit of the 17. division marches in, together with the Austrian troops. Also I want to point out that the Austrian troops did not withdraw but that they got together and fraternized immediately with the German troops, wherever they were stationed.

R. That had to be expected.

G. The marching-in took place, then, according to this wish. Now we also recognize that further invasion is no more necessary. The whole affair is rolling as it is supposed to roll and it has crystallized into a march of joy; if you want to call it like that, as soon as it will stop, - which will be either tomorrow or the day after tomorrow, - the transport back shall start. The Austrian Government

H1224-0115

has informed us that it will then hold a free and secret election, on the basis of democratic principles, so that every Austrian will be able to give his real free vote in a free and secret election. And therefore they want to ask people from abroad so that afterwards no reproach of falsification can be made - like Schuschnigg did - so that they will see that this is a real and secret election. It is also in our interest because we are absolutely convinced that we shall get an overwhelming majority. Therefore it is also in our interest that this election will be handled absolutely correctly. After the election then we shall see the decision the people made and we shall see what is going to happen. But above one thing you must not leave any doubt: We will respect the decision, Austria will make in any respect. And, in case she decides for union - of which we have no doubt - then no power on earth will be able to separate us. It may be that a world-league of all states may overpower Germany, but it won't be possible that we will tolerate to be separated again if Austria decides to go together with Germany. And this is no threat for any state whatsoever, I want to make that clear. In no respect are we threatening the CSR but the CSR has now the possibility to come to a friendly and reasonable agreement with us. They say (the CSR) : " We did not mobilize any soldiers in the West. Nothing has been changed in the present situation." Everything under the condition that France remains sensible and does not take any steps. Naturally, if France organizes now a big mobilization close to the boarder, then it'll not be funny.

R: I believe that they will behave all right.

G: We have a clear conscience and that is the decisive factor. Before world history we have a free conscience. Never has it happened in the world that anyone did interfere if two brother-nations united. That would be against the sovereign rights of people. That would be absolutely ridiculous.

R: I had a long intensive conversation with Halifax, and I told him our basic conception also in respect to the German-English understanding.....

G: That I wanted to say, you know yourself, Ribbentrop, that I always was in favour of a German-English understanding. No one else would be more glad than I, if the English really wanted it seriously, and if they also recognized that we are also a proud and free nation. After all, we also do represent 2 brother-nations.

R: I can tell you one thing, Mr. Goering. The other day I spoke to Chamberlain after that breakfast, and I got a very good impression of him, and he gave me a message, some news for the Fuehrer, which I shall deliver personally to the Fuehrer. Will you be in Berlin this afternoon?

G; Yes, I will. We celebrate the "Memorial Day" (Heldengedenktag) but let me tell you this, you'll have to stay in Berlin. The Fuehrer himself gave me the order that every minister..... You know, otherwise we would have a great migration ..... Yesterday not one single minister and official was at home. I would have needed 1000 planes. Naturally, they all want to enjoy this ecstasy of joy. Therefore I had to keep the gentlemen back by using draconic measures.

R: I cannot tell you that over the phone. But it is better for me to take off today.

G: Yes, I leave it entirely to you.

R: Otherwise, it will not make sense. My conversations are concluded, and if I sit around it might give a funny impression. But I had an excellent impression of Chamberlain.

G: I am glad to hear that.

R: The other day I spoke quite a while with him. I do not want to speak about it over the phone, but I have the impression that Chamberlain also is very serious about an understanding. I told him in this conversation that after the Austrian problem had been settled, the understanding between Germany and England will be so much less complicated than before. I believe, he realized that.

H1224-0116

G: - Look, since the whole problem has been settled down there and no more danger of excitement and disturbance exists - and this was a source of real danger - the people should be thankful for our having eliminated this source of crisis.

R: I told them that, too and also pointed out that we got rid of a situation, which caused always many troubles. Even if there was some excitement at this moment, the great line for the German-English understanding could only be strenghtened by it. I also said to Halifax at the end of our conversation that we honestly do want to come to an understanding and he replied that his only worry was the CSR.

G: No,no, that is out of the question.

R: I told him then that we were not interested and we did not intend to do anything there. On the contrary , if our Fellow-Germans were

H1224-0117

treated in a sensible way, then we should come to an agreement there, too.

G: Yes, I am also convinced that Halifax is an absolutly reasonable man.

R: I got the best impression of Halifax as well as of Chamberlain. He thought it would a little difficult with our (engl) public opinion, because here it looks like force etc. I have the feeling that the normal Englishman, the man in the street will say, why should England bother with Austria. And therefore I believe that if the English Government will tell Chamberlain today him as the leader - after all he is the leader; he himself said so during the last few weeks if he really does interfere in this case and if he gives an explanation in the sense in which we worked it out together (3 words unintelligible) that at home, our Fuehrer, as far as he could see that it is proved by the public English opinion which after a few days or weeks on a great problem of world history in the sense of a German-English understanding like we all desire it (extremely unintelligible).

G: This is absolutly clear. (The following unintelligible). There are matters which do concern people, and there are matters which do not concern them at all.

R: I have to say thru my last conversation with Halifax I have the impression that he did not react to the arguments I gave him, but at last he said I could be convinced that he also did favour a German-English unterstanding.

G: More or less everything is in wonderful peace. Two peoples embrace each other and are overjoyed and express their happiness.

R: All the people over here think .....

G: Another people which other ..... the other state bears the whole responsibility if such misery overcomes the people. Besides I must say, Mussolini behaved wonderfully.

R: Yes, I heard already about it.

G: Wonderful.

R: Very good, indeed. We always thought so !

G: Marvellous ! He (M) said Schuschnigg asked him about the the election. So he answered Schuschnigg: you cannot do that, you cannot do it, such a kind of an election has never happened before; now we have the material which shows how Schuschnigg wanted to carry out these elections. (Some words unintelligible). Everysingle vote we found was a yes-vote. Only votes which did indicate neither yes nor no were considered as no-votes and on these slips was written: "I say no Hermann Goering, Innsbruck ?Strasse 2".

H1224-0118

R: Unbelievable. Anyone of the small people would never have dared to do that.

G: Listen; if someone took a yes-vote and crossed it out with a pencil and then wrote over it "no", then this was considered as "yes". If you took a yes-vote and you tore it in 2 pieces and you threw both parts in, then is was not considered as one vote, but it counted for 2 yes-votes since it was torn into pieces.

R: Really ?

G: As true as I am here ! These are the secret matters which we shall still publish.

R: By God, you should publish it immediately, this is unbelievable.

G: Well, every torn vote was considered as yes-vote; so if several were torn, one did not put them together, but every single torn piece was a yes-vote.

R: This is quite unbelievable

G: Now - but how did one vote !

R: Do we have any material which gives us any clue ?

G: Yes, yes, this is how it happened: Well, you went into the voting-place and said: I am Mr. Meier ! "Yes, Mr.Meier, give me your vote". Now they said that the registry of all the inhabitants was

H1224-0119

delivered. Well, let's say, this Mr. Meier had this list and he marked it. Thenhe went into the next voting place in Innsbruck; they had the same lists, every voting had these lists (words unintelligible.) Mr. Meier said: "I want to vote" "Please, Mr. Meier". It is being marked again. Now he goes into the third voting-place, where again one has the same list, because every voting-place always had the same list.

R: It is unbelievable

G: Now, he gives his vote for the third time. The only fear these people had was the following: That one might find more yes-votes than these were people entitled to vote. But even that would not have bothered them, they would just have subtracted them.

R: They just would have subtracted them.

G: S.-I believes - and so do I, - that he may still find out thru interrogation of the employees that they already had fixed beforehand the numbers of the yes and no-votes and also the amount of people who had not given their vote at all.

R: unintelligible

G: That was the most brazen election which would ever have taken place.

R: Immediately when I was informed first I expressed myself very strongly against this election as a pure swindle a few days ago in my conversation with Halifax.

G: Listen: Another swindle was enacted. Insoite of the fact that them then is a new minister for foreign affairs, the an Hassadors - I believe *the one in London, Frankenstein, (ot.) went also and they have responsibility (unintelligible) toward their old government -- they were made to come, changed opinions of the new ministers according to their convictions. This is being investigated. S-I in formed me about it yesterday. He said, he found out, that there still exist connections between the embassies and underground forces, that is unauthorized people of the old government and that these ambassadors represent requests of the old government on behalf of the new one. Do you understand?

R: Yes.

G: And this is supposed to have happened in London.

R: Yes, yes. Frankenstein himself .... We have a few people, I know, they are very unfriendly.

G: How is Frankenstein?

R: Well, toward us -- I do not know how he really feels, you see, - they borrowed swastika flag for today -

G: That is fine

R: Yes, that is OK. But I believe he always showed himself loyal and decent toward me, I cannot say differently; I cannot say how he really feels though. But, as you know, we have a few people here who are most disagreable.

G: But tell Frankenstein he has to represent the present government.

R: Yes, that is understood.

G: Well, any way, S-I told me yesterday, I do not Know if it was the Austrian Minister in England or in Paris, I believe in Paris, who asked? , is it correct that the Austrian government asked for the German troops. So he was fold by the new foreign office: Yes, that is correct. Well, we said that the new ministry for foreign affair did say the government had not asked for them. This matter is being investigated.

H1224-0120

R: There are a far more fellows there who just try to mingle in; well, thank you so much, Mr. Goering.

G: Come over here, it is beautiful over here.

R: Well, I shall come this afternoon. Generally speaking, I do believe it is a wonderful thing.

G: I want to tell you, I am happy beyond any description. You do not know how much I suffered under the Austrian question. That was what always made me suffer so immensely as a German. I never could understand, that 4 foreign powers were against us, - when just Germans were yearning for Germans. Always this penetrated me to my marrow.

R: I have also, you know, in a very short time - I do not think I am wrong - one will say here - by God, it is good that finally a problem has been settled in such a peaceful way - isn't it fantastic,-

G: Now listen, I do not ask for anything but that the world will respect the election in Austria as we do. If this will happen then I believe that in the next future unintelligible

R: And then I believe, we may - -

G: Ribbentrop, then you have to mention another thing, if you have a chance to, - it is very important. The Austria people is ruined economically. There are many many unemployed people, a terrific misery. In case Austria will make her decision in favor of Germany, we will be able to help these people with our great economic program. We can continue the Autobahn immediately, we can build more highways, we may buy again timber, also some cattle, and imagine, Austria always has lived from tourists. Imagine, if now Austria will make her decision for Germany, then - I am sure - there will not exist a German who will not go to Austria next summer.

R: Well, I believe the unemployment problem will no more exist there, within a short time. I guarantee you, I personally -

G: I believe-within the next 6 weeks - there will be no more one unemployed in Austria - but everybody will be working, and they will be put to work in Austria herself.

R: I want to tell you one more thing: I have not left any doubt what so ever, - that in case of a threat, or if any thing would happen - the Fuehrer and the whole nation will stand behind it - 100 percent.

G: Let me tell you the following, confidentially: The Fuehrer who is usually well controlled, - is too much involved in this respect with his heart since it concerns his homeland. I believe if he receives any threat in the Austrian question he will never give in, and I have to make it clear, neither will the 2 nations. That would be a fanatic matter, in Germany as well as in Austria.

R: That is clear.

G: There is no doubt. Who ever threatens, us now, will strike at both peoples, and both shall put up a fanatic resistance.

R: I believe there is no doubt about that any where.

H1224-0121

G: Yes, if anyone insists on it, all right-. But I always say if there is any states man in the world unscrupulous enough- because 2 German people want to get united - ready to threaten with war, or who ever is ready to send millions of people to the battle-field,- let him come. I rather want my people to be eliminated than that they may give in to this.

R. I never left any doubt about that. But I may say, that I am of the opinion that one is rather reasonable, I do believe.

G. In that,- I have to say,- I'd not see anything reasonable, that would be the most absurd thing. Then the world must have become an insane - asylum. It might be differnt if there was a people over there which might resist with all its force against a German invasion and ask the whole world for help. Then I might understand that. This is just ridiculous.

R. Yes, Mr. Goering-

G. Well, do come! I shall be delighted to see you.

R. I shall see you this afternoon.

G. The weather is wonderful here. Blue sky. I am sitting here on my balcony,- all covered with blankets- in the fresh air, drinking my coffee. Later on I have to drive in, I have to make the speech, and the birds are twittering, and here and there I can hear over the radio the enthusiasm, which must is wonderful over there.

R. That is marvellous.

G. I do envy all those, who could be there yesterday. I have to sit here and have to keep the key - position.

R. Just a whole ago we also listened in.

G. It is interesting, did you hear the Fuehrer's speech from Linz?

R. No, unfortunately not.

G. To me it was the most interesting one- it was very short,- the most interesting speech I ever heard from the Fuehrer. This man who masters the language as hardly any one- this man could hardly speak. It was not much that he said, but he was deeply moved. Then later he phoned me and said: "Goering, you cannot imagine, how beautiful my homeland is-I had forgotten it." Today, he is visiting the grave of his parents where he will deposit a wreath. Linz, imagine, for many years it has been the first time that he is in the city, at the grave of his parents,--- how crazy and grotesque circumstances have been. Imagine, shortly before the Berchtesgadener agreement,- when the house of my sister was searched, she is married to the present secretary of Justice,- the pictures of the Fuehrer and the one of myself - of her own brother- were taken away. (Next sentence annot be understood)
Nothing was written about that.

R. Was the Fuehrer very much shocked?

G. Yes, very much so. I believe, that he goes through dark days. Scenes are supposed to happen... Besides, Ward Price is with him.

H1224-0122

R. Yes, I already have read the article by Ward Price, this morning.

G. From Linz?

R. By Ward Price, very good.

G. Yes, I mean, concerning Linz?

R. Yes, about Linz, wonderful.

G. Well, this does interest me, because, he is supposed to ---

R. I do know: The Fuehrer asked for him and wanted his opinion, if he did consider that, what he did see here, as force?

G. What does W P write about it?

R. Well, he writes,--- it looks like it must have been overwhelming.

G. Imagine, this small town of 36.000 inhabitants, almost half a million people are supposed to have gathered here. - Well, do come!

R. Good bye, and Heil Hitler.

G. Heil Hitler.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT 2949-PS, Part W

23rd November, 1945.

I, GOETZ MAYER, T/5 33 812 169; hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of the Document 2949-PS, Part W.

GOETZ MAYER

T/5 33 812 169.

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 2950-PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

AFFIDAVIT

I, WILHELM FRICK, former Reich Minister of the Interior, being duly sworn, declare:

HEINRICH HIMMLER in June of 1934 was able to convince Hitler that ROEHM wanted to start a putsch. The Fuhrer ordered HIMMLER to suppress the putsch which was supposed to take place at the Tegernsee, where all of the SA leaders were coming to gather. For Northern Germany, the Fuhrer gave the order to suppress the putsch to GOERING. On account of this order, many, many people were arrested, and as was heard in the course of time little by little, something like a hundred, even more, were killed who were accused of high treason. All of this was done without resort to legal proceedings. They were just killed on the spot. Many people were killed -- I don't know how many -- who actually did not have anything to do with the putsch. People who just weren't liked very well, as for instance, SCHLEICHER, the former Reich Chancellor, were killed, SCHLEICHER's wife was also killed as was GREGOR STRASSER, who had been the Reich organization leader and second man in the Party after Hitler. STRASSER, at the time he was murdered, was not active in political affairs anymore. However, he had separated himself from the Fuhrer in November or December of 1932.

The SS was used by HIMMLER for the execution of these orders to suppress the putsch. This was the first illegal act by the Party since the accession to power. This state of affairs which is today still partly under discussion and which I consider correct was never stated officially but became known in the course of the years little by little.

/s/ Wilhelm Frick

Before me, the undersigned authority, on this 19th day of November 1945, personally appeared WILHELM FRICK known to me, who on oath stated that he had carefully read the foregoing statement signed by him and that the matters and facts therein stated are true and correct.

SEYMOUR M. PEYSER,
Major, JAGD

H1224-0123

H1224-0124

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2950-PS

19 November 1945

I, GERARD SCHAEFER, 2nd Lt., Inf., 0-1332102, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document No. 2950-PS.

GERARD SCHAEFER
2nd Lt., Inf.
0-1332102

Exhibit USA 578
Filed Jan. 8, 1946

H1224-0125

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 2962-PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

. . .

v.A.v. Rk 2581[33]

Record
of the Ministers' Conference
of 15 March 1933, 6:30 PM
in the Reich Chancellery

Distribution

1) Secret, to the attention of the State Secretary. (Staatssekretaer).
2) respectfully submitted to the special advisers (Referenten).
3) respectfully submitted to Ministerial Amtmann Buesch.
4) to the files.

(Several illegible notations)

Present:

Reich Chancellor	Hitler
Deputy of the Reich Chancellor and Reich Commissioner for Prussia	von Papen
Reich Minister for Foreign Affairs	Baron von Neurath
Reich Minister of the Interior	Dr. Frick
Reich Minister of Finance	Count Schwerin von Krosigk
Reich Minister of Economics and Reich Minister for Nutrition and Agriculture	Dr. Hugenberg
Reich Minister of Labor	Seldte
For the Reich Minister of Justice	Dr. Guertner: State Secretary Dr. Schlegelberger
Reich Minister of Defense	von Blomberg
Reich Postal Minister and Reich Minister of Communications	Baron von Eltz-Ruebenach
Reich Minister for Popular Enlightenment and Propaganda	Dr. Goebbels
Reich Minister without portfolio, Reich Commissioner for Aviation	Goering
Reich Commissioner, Reich Minister, retired	Dr. Popitz
Reich Commissioner for Labor Procurement	Dr. Gereke

H1224-0126

State Secretary in the Reich Chancellery — Dr. Lammers

State Secretary in the office of the Reich President — Dr. Meissner

Reich Press Chief: State Secretary — Funk

Recorder: Ministerial Counselor (Ministerialrat) Wienstein, points 1-3

Senior Government Counselor (Oberregierungsrat) Killy for points 4-7

Page 2 Subjects Under Discussion

Rk 2582[33] (1) Political situation
Not on the agenda:

Rk 2583[33] (2) Report of the State Secretary in the Reich Chancellery re: the Reich Center for Home Service (Reichszentrale fuer Heimatdienst),

(in pencil) Rk 2584[33]
Rk 2155[33] (3) Punishment and trial of the perpetrators involved in the burning of the Reichstag

---

Rk 2585[33] (4) Work-week in Reich Railway maintenance (Not included in the agenda)

Rk 2586[33] (5) Draft of an emergency decree on the Reich Institute (Reichsanstalt) for Employment Service and Unemployment insurance.

Rk 2587[33] (6) Discussions of financial policies.

Rk 2588[33] (7) Suspension of the wage premium.

(in pencil)

. . . . . .

-.-.-.-.-.-.-.-.-.-.-

H1224-0127

1) Political Situation

The Reich Chancellor opened the session and stated that the political situation was completely clarified now that the elections of the municipal councils had taken place.

The clarification of the relations between the Reich and the south German lands was of decisive importance, especially that of the relationship
Page 3 between the Reich and Bavaria. The Reich idea (Reichsgedanke) had shown itself surprisingly strong everywhere. The revolution in Bavaria was perhaps the most thorough one. In his opinion, further internal political developments would progress without disturbance. In Wuerttemberg a government had already been formed. In Bavaria it was still necessary to clarify certain seperatist activities. For this reason it would, in his opinion, be practical to wait a while with the formation of a government in Bavaria. The national revolution had taken place without great upheavals. He stated that henceforth, it would be necessary to detour all activities of the people towards the purely political, because economic decisions had to be awaited.

In his opinion there would be no difficulties in getting the Enabling Act (Ermaechtigungsgesetz) through the Reichstag with a two-thirds majority.

The foreign political situation had in no way become worse. He was firmly convinced that foreign countries would take a totally different attitude towards the present Reich government than to the former ones, that is, they would treat it with greater respect.

The situation in Austria could not yet be surveyed clearly. As long as the political center of gravity was in Vienna, France would always be able to assert a strong influence.

Page 4 The Reich Minister of the Interior gave the information that he had attended the session of the Reichstag Committee of Oldest Members (Aeltestenrat). The five Reichstag parties still existing were all represented, namely the National Socialists by Reich Minister Goering and himself, the Social Democrats by Loebe and Hertz, the Central Party by Leicht and Rauch. The German National Party was also represented. Immediate agreement was reached that a seniority president was not necessary and that Reichstag President Goering should preside over the sessions of the new Reichstag.

He, the Reich Minister of the Interior, had pointed out that the Reichstag ought to pass within three days an Enabling Act with the majority necessary to change the constitution. The Central Party (Zentrum) had not expressed any objection. Representative Esser had however asked to be received by the Reich Chancellor.

There still remained the question of what should happen to the drafts of bills not presented, which ought to be supported by the present administration, and formerly had already been presented to the Reichstag. In his opinion it was best, in consideration of the Enabling Act not to present the list to the Reich Council and the Reichstag, but to pass the list later on the basis of the Enabling Act.

Page 5 The Enabling Act would have to be so broadly framed that every provision of the German constitution could be side-tracked. It would have to have a time limit of four years for the time being. He, the Reich Minister of the Interior had in mind something like the following text for the law:

"The Reich administration shall be enabled to take such measures as it deems necessary in view of the needs of the people and State. In doing so the provisions of the Reich constitution can be waived."

It was still to be determined if an addition to the content would be practical, according to which the validity of the Enabling Act (Ermaechtigungsgesetz) would depend on the present composition of the Reich government.

As regards the two-third majorities demanded by the Reich constitution, altogether 432 representatives would have to be present to pass the Enabling Act, with the communists included and the number of elected Reichstag representatives assumed to be 647. If the Communist representatives are deducted the total number of representatives would have to be present in order to pass the Enabling Act. He believed it better not to eliminate the Communist mandates. On the other hand, prohibition of the Communist Party would be practical. The prohibition would result in dissolution of the organizations. Eventually all the persons who would still insist

H1224-0129

Page 6

on professing communism would have to be sent to labor camps.

Reich Minister Goering expressed his conviction that the Enabling Act would be passed with the necessary two-thirds majority. Possibly a majority could be obtained by banishing several Social Democrats from the hall. Possibly the Social Democrats would even refrain from voting on the Enabling Act. At the election of the President of the Reichstag the Social Democrats would certainly hand in blank slips.

The Reich Chancellor declared it necessary to set a period of time for turning in explosives. In the course of the past few years about 3,000 hundredweight (Zentner) of explosives had been stolen; only 300 hundredweight were turned in again.

The Reich government would have to announce that it did not intend to eliminate the Reichstag. He, the Reich Chancellor intended to emphasize this in his government declaration.

The deputy of the Reich Chancellor and Reich Commissioner for Prussia (Land Preussen) stated that it was of decisive importance to coordinate into the new state the masses standing behind the parties. The question of the incorporation of political Catholicism into the new state

Page 7

was of particular importance. Perhaps the parties could be informed in every case about the measures intended to be taken by the Reich government.

The question of the flag would best be settled by a law to be passed by the Reichstag and not on the basis of the Enabling Act (Ermaechtigungsgesetz).

The Reich Minister of Foreign Affairs also emphasize the nessessity of regulating the flag question through the Reichstag. In addition he brought up the question if it would not be more practical to have international treaties also passed on by the Reichstag. Perhaps the procedure could be limited to transmission to the Reichstag of only a list of the treaties to be passed.

The Reich Minister of the Interior urgently advised against such procedure because the Reichstag would enter into a never-ending debate on the content of the treaties

The Reich Minister for Foreign Affairs declared that he thought the suspicions of the Reich Minister of the Interior were justified.

The Reich Minister of Economics and Reich Minister for Nutrition and Agriculture brought up the question, if it was considered that the Reich President should have a hand in the laws which would be decreed by the Rei government on the basis of the Enabling Act.

State Secretary (Staatssekretaer) Dr. Meissner replied that the assistance of the Reich president was not necessary; the Reich president would not demand it. Yet,

Page 8

it might perhaps be practical if the authority of the Reich president would be brought into play in the case of some laws of special importance.

H1224-0130

Furthermore, State secretary Dr. Meissner pointed out that there were still in the Reichstag some factors dangerous to the acceptance of the Enabling Act.

The Reich Chancellor declared that he definitely hoped to overcome any difficulties existing in the Reich Council (Reichsrat).

The Reich Minister of Finance stated that it was necessary to submit a special Credit Enabling Act to the Reichstag.

Reich Commissioner, Reich Minister, retired, Dr. Popitz suggested the following supplement to the Enabling Act: "The regulations decreed on the basis of the Enabling Act shall be regarded as a law in the sense of the Reich constitution, especially in the sense of the article of the constitution in regard to the budget plan (Haushaltplan) and the credit authorization (Kreditermaechtigungsgesetz)".

The Reich Minister of Finance further stated that it would be practical to set up a special commission, perhaps consisting of representatives of the Reich Ministry of the Interior, the Reich Ministry of Finance, the Prussian Ministry of the Interior, and the Prussian Ministry of Finance, to make a list of such measures which would have to be passed first, on the basis of the Enabling Act.

The Reich Chancellor declared that this proposition
Page 9 was very practical.

2) Report of the State Secretary (Staatssekretaer) in the Reich Chancellery as regards the Reich Center for Home Service (Reichszentrale fuer Heimatdienst).

The State Secretary in the Reich Chancellery set forth that the Reich Center for Home Service had become superfluous as a result of the establishment of the Reich Ministry for Popular Enlightenment and Propaganda. He read the enclosed draft of a decree for the dissolution of the Reich Center for Home Service and gave a more detailed report on the composition of the central leadership (Zentralleitung) and the state branches (Landesabteilungen) of the Reich Center for Home Service.

The Cabinet took note of this.

3) Punishment and trial of the perpetrators involved in the burning of the Reichstag.

State Secretary (Staatssekretaer) Dr. Schlegelberger called attention to the opinions rendered on the above mentioned matter by the Reich Ministry of Justice (Reichsjustizministerium). He informed that the interrogator, Reichsgerichtsrat Vogt, had discussed with them the status of the investigation of the burning of the Reichstag. According to inquiries so far, there was strong suspicion that van der Lubbe was not the only perpetrator. Among others a Swiss, a Bulgarian and another Dutchman had been arrested. Reichsgerichtsrat Vogt was entirely equal to the task.

H1224-0131

State Secretary (Staatssekretaer) Dr. Meissner pointed out that the Reich Chancellor still had insurmountable doubts about issuing a decree to fix the death sentence for the burning of the Reichstag. Perhaps the Reich government could issue such a regulation on the basis of the Enabling Act.

The Reich Chancellor replied that the issue of such a regulation was definitely in order.

For the transcript
points 1 - 3
(signed) Wienstein 13/3

4) Work week for Reich Railroad Maintenance. (not included in the agenda).

The Reich Minister of Labor set forth that for permanent railroad workers the 48 hour week would be in effect also during the summer, and for the temporary workers who were to be employed, the 40 hour week.

- - - - -

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT No.2962-PS

I, WANDA S. TIESZEN, X, 046 265, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document No.2962-PS.

WANDA S. TIESZEN
X, 046 265

H1224-0132

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 2986-PS
OFFICE OF U S CHIEF OF COUNSEL

I, Wilhelm Frick, being first duly sworn, depose and say:

I was Plenipotentiary for Reich Administration (Generalbevellmaechtigter fuer die Reichsverwaltung) from the time when this office was created, until 20 August 1943. Heinrich Himmler was my deputy in this capacity. Before the outbreak of the war my task as Plenipotentiary for Reich Administration was the preparation of organization in the event of war, such as, for instance, the appointment of liaison men in the different ministries who would keep in touch with me. As Plenipotentiary for Reich Administration, I, together with the Plenipotentiary for Economy and the OKW formed what was called a "3-Man College" (Dreierkollegium). We also were members of the Reich Defense Council (Reichsverteidigungsrat), which was supposed to plan preparations and decrees in case of war which later on were published by the Ministerial Council for the Defense of the Reich. Since, as soon as the war started, everything had to be done speedily and there would have been no time for planning, such measures and decrees were prepared in advance in case of war. All one then still had to do was to pull out of the drawer the war orders that had been prepared. Later on, after the outbreak of the war, these decrees were enacted by the Ministerial Council for the defense of the Reich.

(Signed) Dr. Wilhelm Frick

Subscribed and sworn to before me this 19th day of November 1945 in Nuremberg, Germany.

(Signed) Warren F. Farr
Major, Judge Advocate General's Department
Army of the United States
Office of U.S. Chief of Counsel for
Prosecution of Axis Criminality

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 2986-PS

21 November 1945

I, WALTER E. MENKE, Civilian, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document No. 2986-PS, as corrected.

WALTER E. MENKE
Civilian

H1224-0133

TRANSLATION OF EXCERPTS OF DOCUMENT 3005-PS
OFFICE OF US. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Vol 78-L

Annex 1 to the Decree of
the Minister for Ordnance

THE REICH MINISTER OF LABOR

Nr. 371-4770/41 secret
216/985

Va 5135/1277

Special Delivery!

To the
Presidents of Regional Labor Exchange Offices
(including Nuernberg Branch Office)

SUBJECT: Use of Russian PWs

REFERENCE: Circular of 14 August 1941 - Va 5135/1189 -.

Upon personal order of the Reich Marshal, 100,000 men are to be taken from among the French PWs not yet employed in armament industry, and are to be assigned to the armament industry (airplane industry). Gaps in manpower supply resulting therefrom will be filled by Soviet PWs. The transfer of the above-named French PWs is to be accomplished by 1 October.

Russian PWs can be utilized only in quite lqrge, concentrated groups under the well-known, tougher employment conditions. In the civilian field, the Regional Labor Exchange Offices will have to determine immediately those work projects where French prisoners of war can be withdrawn and replaced by Soviet groups. For the time being, mo addtitional assignment of Soviet prisoners of war can be considered. Initially all replacement possibilities must be completely exhausted. Similarly, all French PWs no longer needed are not to be channeled into agriculture and forestry any more, but exclusively into armament industry (aircraft industry).

All branches of economic life employing French PWs, with the exception of armament industry and mining, are to be concompassed in determining those work projects where exchanges are feasible. The absolute necessity that Soviet PW replacements be employed in larger concentrated groups, requires, among other things, special checking of all larger construction projects of any kind (including construction of the Reich Railroads, navigational and cultivication projects). Reich Minister Dr. Todt has already consented to the exchange of French PWs employed by the Reich Super-Highways (Reichsautobahnen). In agriculture the exchange can naturally be effected only in the case of large estates (especially estates with outlying farms). Exchange of PWs will frequently encounter resistence. The factories concerned will be reluctant to exchange the trained and proven French PWs for Soviet PWs. In

H1224-0134

TRANSLATION OF EXCERPTS OF DOCUMENT 3005-PS CONT'D

such cases the Labor Exchange Offices have to draw the factories attention to the necessities of state, and to the directive of the Reich Marshal.

As soon as the Regional Labor Exchange Offices have determined the work projects affected by the exchange, they will inform the Service Command Headquarters, indicating how many French PWs are being made available and how many Soviet PWs will be needed to replace the French PWs. Without my express consent, not more than 120 Soviet PWs may be requested for each 100 French PWs made available. Since the determining factor in the allocation of Soviet PWs are military and counter-intelligence considerations, final decision about the exchange rests with Service Command Headquarters.

.....

The first 100,000 French prisoners of war shall be channeled into the aircraft industry. .....

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION OF EXCERPTS OF DOCUMENT 3005-PS

24 November 1945

I, PAUL W. FREEDMAN, S/SGT., 33799122, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of excerpts of Document 3005-PS.

PAUL W. FREEDMAN
S/SGT.
33799122

H1224-0135

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 3042 PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

CAMP MARCUS W. ORR)
) SS
SALZBURG, AUSTRIA)

Kajetan MUEHLMANN states under oath:

I have been a member of the NSDAP since 1 April 1938, I was a BRIG. GEN. (OBERFUEHRER) in the SS.

I never was an illegal Nazi.

I was the special deputy of the Governor General of Poland, HANS FRANK, for the safeguarding of art treasures in the General Government, October 1939 to September 1943.

Goering, in his function as chairman of the Reich Defense Council, had commissioned me with this duty.

I confirm, that it was the official policy of the Governerl General, HANS FRANK, to take into custody all important art treasures, which belonged to Polish public institutions, private collections and the Church. I confirm, that the art treasures, mentioned, were actually confiscated, and it is clear to me, that they would not have remained in Poland in case of a German victory, but that they would have been used to complement German artistic property.

/s/ Dr. Kajetan Muehlmann
/t/ DR. KAJETANN MUEHLMANN

Sworn to and subscribed
before me, this 19th day
of November 1945.

/s/ B.D. Silliman Major JAGD
/t/ B.D. SILLIMAN MAJOR, J..G.D.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 3042 PS

22 November 1945

I, WILLARD E. SKIDMORE Lt., (jg), USNR, 391590, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document No. 3042 PS.

WILLARD E. SKIDMORE,
Lt. (jg) USNR
391590

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 3051 PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

First Document: (Translator's note: sheet of paper approximately 4 inches by 6 inches, containing pencil notes as follows:)

General Field Marshal
has noted.

initials illegible
20 Nov.

I.A. (by order)
initials illegible
15 Nov 38

Second Document:

COPY

II
I. Teletype

Berlin, 10 November 1938

1) To all Headquarters and Stations of the State Police.

2) To all Sections and Sub-sections of the SD.

Urgently to be submitted!

Re: Measures against Jews.

Following my order of tonight, I explicitly point out that looting will be barred under all circumstances by usingcorresponding measures.

Looters are to be arrested. For more details, instructions will be given by me.

The Reich "Ministry of Justice" (Reichsjustizministerium) has instructed all Public Prosecutors to put at the disposal of the State Police the prisons to hold the arrested Jews.

In addition, the Reich Ministry of Justice asks that in no case are orders to be issued against persons who may have been arrested during the action.

Finally, the Reich Ministry of Justice has instructed the Public Prosecutors not to proceed in any interrogation on matters of the Jewish actions (Judenaktionen).

All this exclusively for your information.

The Chief of the Security Police

/s/ Heydrich

Third Document:

COPY

Chief of the Security Police

Berlin, 10 November 1938

I. Teletype

To all Headquarters of the State Police.

Referring to my teletype instructions, I instruct you once more that whenever, during the protest action, looting has occurred, you should proceed ruthlessly, by intensive interrogations, to establish the persons guilty and to secure the objects of the looting.

I ask you to inform me by 11 November 1938, at 8 AM, by telegram all cases of looting known to you, indicating just the facts and the guilty persons if found.

Before turning over these persons to the examining judge, you must get my instructions.

H1224-0136

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 3051 PS
Continued

If necessary, the Kripo can be used to clear up the facts.

Chief of the Security Police

/s/ Heydrich

Fourth Document:

S E C R E T

Copy of Teletype from Munich, 10 November 1938, 1:20 AM.

To all
Headquarters and Station of the State Police.

To all
Districts and Sub-district of the SD.

Urgent! Submit immediately to the
Chief or his deputy.

Re:
Measures against Jews tonight.

Because of the attempt on the life of the Secretary of the Legation von Rath in Paris tonight, 9-10 November 1938, demonstrations against Jews are to be expected throughout the Reich. The following instructions are given on how to treat tese events:

1) The Chiefs of the State Police, or their deputies, must get in telephonic contact with the political leaders (Gauleitung oder Kreisleitung) who have jurisdiction over their districts and have to arrange a joint meeting with the appropriate inspector or commander of the Order Police (Ordnungspolizei) to discuss the organization of the demonstrations. At these discussions the political leaders have to be informed that the German Police has received from the Reichsfuehrer SS and Chief of the German Police the following instructions, in accordance with which the political leaders should adjust their own measures.

a) Only such measures should be taken which do not involve danger to German life or property. (For instance synagogues are to be burned down only when there is no danger of fire to the surroundings).

b) Business and private apartments of Jews may be destroyed but not looted. The police is instructed to supervise the execution of this order and to arrest looters.

c) On business streets, particular care is to be taken that non-Jewish business should be protected from damage.

d) Foreigners, even Jews, are not to be molested.

2) The demonstrations which are going to take place should not be hindered by the police provided that the instructions quoted above in section 1 are carried out. The police has only to supervise compliance with the instructions.

3) Upon receipt of this telegram, in all synagogues and offices of the Jewish communities the available archives should be seized by the police, to forestall destruction during the demonstrations. This refers only to valuable historical material, not to new lists of taxes, etc. The archives are to be turned over to the competent SD offices.

4) The direction of the measures of the Security Police concerning the demonstrations against Jews is vested with the organs of the State Police, inasmuch as the inspectors of the Security Police are not issuing their own orders. In order to carry out the measures of the Security Police, officials of the Criminal Police as well as members of the SD of the "Verfuegungstruppe" and the allgemeinen SS may be used .

5) Inasmuch as in the course of the events of this night the employment of officials used for this purpose would be possible, in all districts

as many Jews, especially rich ones, are to be arrested as can be accommodated in the existing prisons (Haftraeumen). For the time being only healthy men not too old are to be arrested. Upon their arrest, the appropriate concentration camps should be contacted immediately, in order to confine them in these camps as fast as possible. Special care should be taken that the Jews arrested in accordance with these instructions are not mistreated.

6) The contents of this order are to be forwarded to the appropriate inspectors and commanders of the Ordnungspolizei and to the districts of the SD (SD-Oberabschnitte und SD-Unterabschnitte), adding that the Reichsfuehrer SS and Chief of the German Police ordered this police measure. The Chief of the Ordnungspolizei has given the necessary instructions to the Ordnungspolizei, including the fire brigade. In carrying outthe ordered measures, the closest harmony should be assured between the Sicherheitspolizei and the Ordnungspolizei.

The receipt of this telegram is to be confirmed by the Chiefs of the State Police or their deputies by telegram to the Gestapo, care of SS Standartenfuehrer Mueller.

/s/ Heydrich
SS Gruppenfuehrer

Fifth Document:

C O P Y

Teletype

To all Headquarters of the State Police
To all Districts and Sub-districts of the SD.

Protest actions are stopped (see information of press and radio).

An increased patrol activity is to be instituted for the coming night in cooperation with the Order Police (Ordnungspolizei).

Actions still takingplace should be barred. However, the justified indignation of the population should be taken into consideration.

Ruthless proceedings should be taken against looters.

The arrests should be continued without restriction and exclusively by the Staatspolizei (leit) stellen.

Chief of the Security Police

/s/ Heydrich

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 3051 PS

25 November 1945

I, DR. FELIX EDWARD SHARTON, X-046312, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document No. 3051 PS.

FELIX EDWARD SHARTON
X-046312

H1224-0138

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO. 3058-PS
OFFICE OF US CHIEF OF COUNSEL.

The General Field Marshal has been informed. No steps are to be taken.

By Order
Roe (?)
15. 11. 38

The Chief of the
Security Police
LL B 4 - 5716/38 g

Berlin SW 11, 11 Nov. 1938
Prinz-Albrecht Strasse 8
Tel. A 2 Flora 0040.

P. 1 of
original

Express letter

SECRET

To:

The Prime Minister
Generla Field Marshal Goering. For the attention of Dr. Gritzbach
Secretary to the Ministry,

Berlin W 8,
Leipzieger Str. 3.

Subject: Action against the Jews.

The reports of the State Police offices which have so far been received up to 11. 11. 1938 the following general impression:

In numerous cities, looting of Jewish shops and business premises has occured. In order to avoid further looting, stron action was taken in all cases. 174 persons were arrested for looting.

The extent of the destruction of Jewish shops and housed cannot yet be verified by figures. The figures given in the reports: 815 shops destroyed, 171 dwelling-houses set on fire or destroyed, only indicate a fraction of the actual damage caused, as far as arson is concerned. Due to the urgency of the reporting, the reports received to date are entirely limited.to general statements such as " numerous " or " most shops destroyed ". Therefore the figures given must have been exceeded considerably.

191 Synagogues were set on fire, and another 76 completely destroyed. In addition 11 parish halls, (GEMEINDEHAUSER) cemetery chapels and similar buildings were set on fire and 3 more completely destroyed.

20,000 Jews were arrested, also 7 Aryans and 3 foreigners. The latter were arrested for their ownsafety.

36 deaths were reported and those seriously injured were also numbered at 36. Those killed and injured are Jews. One Jew is still missing. The Jews killed include one Polish national, and those injured include 2 Poles.

(Signed) Heydrich K.

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 3058-PS

26 November, 1945

I, ENID M. STANDRING, P/O WRNS, 52012, hereby certify that I am thoroughly familiar with the English and German languages, and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document No. 3058-PS.

ENID M. STANDRING
P/O WRENS, 52012

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 3251 PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Reconstruction of a Nation

by

HERMANN GOERING

Prime Minister of Prussia

Reich Minister for Aviation and Lieutenant General

Aufbau Einer Nation

von

HERMANN GOERING

Ministerpraesident von Preussen

Reichsminister fuer Luftfahrt und General der Infanterie

Second Edition
Zweite Auflage

E.S. Mittler & Son/Berlin 1934

(Page 52 line 26 to Page 53, line 14)

For over a decade, I have been at his side, and still, every day with him is a new experience. I belonged to him hide and hair from the first moment on, when I saw and heard him and to how many comrades did exactly the same thing happen. I have bound myself to him with passionate devotion, and have followed him unshakeably. Numerous titles and honors have been bestowed on me during the past months, and still no title and no decoration could make me so proud, as the designation, given to me by the German people:

"The most faithful paladin of our FUEHRER". In that, my relationship to the Fuehrer finds expression. I followed him for over a decade with unreserved faith, and I will follow him with the same unconditional faith until my end.

* * * * * * * * * * * * *

(Page 79, line 1 to line 6)

The moment was unforgetable for me; I, who have gone back and forth as representative so often between the KAISERHOF and the WILHELMSTRASSE during the past year, when I hurried out to my car and could report to the questioning masses as the first one: "HITLER has become REICH CHANCELLOR".

* * * * * * * * * * * * *

(Page 84, line 2 to line 11)

The most important thing for me was first, to get the instrument of power of the protective police nd political police firmly in my hand. Here, I undertood the first sweeping changes of personnel. Of the 32 available colonels of the protective police, I dismissed 22. Hundreds of officers and thousnads of sergeants followed them in the course of the next months. New forces were procured, and everywhere, these forces were taken out of the large reserve pool of the SA and the SS.

* * * * * * * * * * * * *

(Page 88, line 1 to line 6)

For weeks, I personally worked on this transformation, and finally I created alone and from my own conviction and own thought the "Secret State Police Office". That instrument, feared so much by the enemies of the state, which above all has contributed so much, that today a Communist or Marxist danger in Germany or Prussia is hardly worth talking about anymore.

* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *

(Page 88, line 16 to line 20)

I was supported most actively in this by the SS and SA. Without their employment, without their help I could not have mastered the enemies of the state so rapidly and so actively.

CERTIFICATE OF PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO. 3251 PS

29 November 1945

I, WILLARD E. SKIDMORE, Lt. (jg) USNR, 391590, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct partial translation of Document No. 3251 PS.

WILLARD E. SKIDMORE
Lt. (jg), USNR
391590

H1224-0141

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT No. 3252-PS
OFFICE OF U S CHIEF OF COUNSEL

1937, Hermann Goering, the Man and His Work.
By Erich Gritzbach

1937, Herman Goering, Work und Mensch.
von Erich Gritzbach

Page 12:

This is surely Goring's most hapoiest hour, wrote Dr. Goebbels in his book "Vom Kaiserhof zur Reichskanzlei" and quoting from it said: that Goering prepared diplomatically and politically in a long lasting and hard struggle the basis for Hitler's rise. His prudence, his strong nerves, but particularly his strength of character and his faithfulness to the Fuehrer, were really true, strong and admirable.....

Page 31:

The reorganization of the leading positions in the ministry was quickly concluded. Goering appointed to them, men who had his confidence. Specialists, who were well known for the excellent work they had done and were not connected with any of the system parties, were retained, so as to keep the center of the inner administration efficient and competent.

Ruthless measures are taken though, against anybody, who as a camouflaged enemy tries to retain his position. The officials connected with the old party system are being fired in large numbers. The weeding out process of the inner administration, as the first prerequisite for reconstruction, comprised everybody from departmental heads to the last commissionaraire. The new Minister of the Interior appoints Dr. Grauert, formerly head of the most important department, the police department, and man whom he knew for a long time and thought highly of as a strong worker, as Public Prosecutor. On the day of the formation of the Prussian Cabinet, the prime minister appointed Dr. Grauert Secretary of State in the Ministry of the Interior.....

The present reorganization of the security police is hardly noticed by the public. Their ranks are strengthened by the SA, the most reliable instrument of the movement. The Auxiliary Police has given effective aid by their fighting spirit in the struggle against the Communists and other enemies of the State, not only to Goering, but has, driven by their national socialist desire for a new spirit within the executive Police, assisted in their rigid organization.....

Page 48:

Since the assumption of power and May 1934, when Goering handed over the Ministry of the Interior, 8,000 men were taken into the security police force. They were all members of the party formations or had come from the voluntary labor force, pursuant to the orders of Goering's constituting, that the entire replacement of the police force had to consist up to a 100% of members of the organization of the movement.....

Pages 194-195:

The movement was conducted by the Fuehrer from Munich. But one man has to act for him in Berlin- whilst Gauleiter Goebbels stirs up the masses and makes them ripe for National Socialism, a man, on whom he could reply unconditionally to the same extent as if he acted himself. And thus Herman Goering became the political deputy of Adolf Hitler.

H1224-0142

Pages 194-195 (cont'd)

It is not necessary that the Fuehrer issues new directives to his deputy in each separate case. Of course, Goering will not act on his own without fundamental instructions from Adolf Hitler. During the years of the common struggle, so much of Adolf Hitler had been absorbed by him, that it seems, he had become part of this man. He does the right thing instinctively. Though time is sometimes short, a decision has to be made. In a case like this, Goering acts as a soldier has to act--"Sooner make a blunder, than cowardly hesitate and waste valuable time."".....

Page 197:

In an interview with the Chief editor of the "Westdeutscher Beobachter", Goering declared: "It is correct, that we once considered to cooperate with some figures of the present cabinet. The politics carried out by the Chancellor during the last months make any cooperation with the National Socialists impossible. There is only one way out of this "tribute slavery". The rearmament of our people. The question of tribute is in its nature solely a problem of power politics. Therefore, it can only be solaced by power politics.

Page 201:

Goering succeeded already in the fall of 1931 to see the Reichspresident in order to accomplish a clarification. He saw quite clearly that the decision rested solely with Generalfeldmarshal von Heindenberg and that it was therefore necessary to win this great personage, that already during his lifetime had gone down in German history for the German liberation movement. Heindenberg is the rock in the chaotic sea of the republic. But the access to the Reichspresident is blocked for the young fighters of the liberation movement. Goering's most difficult and at the same time most important job is to break down the barrier round the president. The Fieldmarshall must convince himself eye to eye with Fuehrer of the mission of this unknown World War corporal. Now it had happened. What had been thought impossible by most succeeded in spite of a veritable net of intrigues. On October 10, 1931, the Fuehrer and Goering are received by the Reichspresident. A short official notice WTB 10.10.1931. "Hitler with Heindenberg." Today the Reichspresident received Mr. Adolf Hitler and the Reichstags Deputy Captain (retired) Goering and accepted a detailed report on the aims of the national Socialist movement. This was followed by an elocution on internal and foreign political affairs.....

Page 213:

There is a vote of non-confidence on the program for the day. It was well known that the Reichschancellor already had a mandate from the Reichspresident to dissolve the Reichstag. He thought himself safe and protected with these powers of dissolution in his pocket. Too sure, because the chairman of the Reichstag Goering acted with lightning speed, and before the chancellor has a chance to speak, voting on the non-confidence motion is already in progress. A crushing result. With 513 votes against the 32 cast by the German Nationals, the Papen government fell through a vote of non-confidence.

- - - - - - - - - - - - - -

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION OF
Document No. 3252-PS

29 November 1945

I, PAUL S. SEIBENSHIM, AEF, P.51016, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a correct and true translation of Document No. 3252-PS.

PAUL S. SEIBENSHIM,
AEF, P.51016.

H1224-0143

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 3440 PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Extract from Speech of Goering on 11 December 1934 before Members of the Diplomatic Corps, Representatives of the World Press, and important Members of the Government, of the Army, and of the Party, entitled "Die Ueberwindung des Kommunismus in Deutschland".

(Reported in Das Archiv, November - December 1934, p. 1153, 1154).

"We were firmly determined after assumption of power to hit the Communists so that in Germany they would never recover from our blow. For that we did not require a Reichstag fire! That has been one of the most important points on our program. In the former Weimar Republic the destruction of Communism was unthinkable. For the execution of these measures we needed the instrument of a thoroughly reliable, and to the highest degree, powerful police force. I have created this instrument through the reorganization of the field police (Landespolizei) and the formation of a Secret State Police. These organizations will be a continuous means for implanting fear in all enemies of the State such as a State needs if it wishes to defend itself for ever". When mentioning concentration camps the Minister President appealed to you representatives of foreign countries to ask themselves how their own countries would have dealt with people who had shown themselves in the most disastrous manner the sworn enemies of every public order. "I would like to see the State which will assume the responsibility or permitting those people, who were the cause for the sacrifice of thousands of human lives to continue or renew their activity. If the assertion is made that concentration camps are places of torture, then I declare such assertions to be pure invention and maliciously conceived.

CERTIFICATE OF PARTIAL TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 3440 PS

17 December 1945

I, CHARLES E. BIDWELL, Civ., hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct partial translation of Document No. 3440 PS.

CHARLES E. BIDWELL
Civ.

H1224-0144

From Part of Exhibit USA 437
Read Jan. 8, 1946

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 3441 PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

[illegible]ing: Reden und Aufsaetze, Munich, 1939; p. 242.

"I repeat: I intend to create a Luftwaffe which, if the hour should strike, shall burst upon the foe like a chorus of revenge. The enemy must have the feeling of being lost already before even having fought ..."

CERTIFICATE OF PARTIAL TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 3441 PS

17 December 1945

I, CHARLES E. BIDWELL, Civ., hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct partial translation of Document No. 3441 PS.

CHARLES E. BIDWELL

H1224-0145

Exhibit USA 576
Filed Jan. 8, 1946

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 3442 PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

From Hitler's address to the Reichstag, July 13, 1934.
Das Archiv, Vol. 4-6, p. 505.

"Meanwhile Minister-President Goering had already received my instructions that in case of a purge he was to take analogous measures at once in Berlin and in Prussia. With an iron fist he beat down the attack on the National Socialist State before it could develop".

CERTIFICATE OF PARTIAL TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 3442 PS

17 December 1945

I, CHARLES E. BIDWELL, Civ., hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct partial translation of Document No. 3442 PS.

CHARLES E. BIDWELL,
Civ.

H1224-0146

Exhibit USA 588
Filed Jan-8, 1946.

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO. 3458-PS
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

EXCERPT From a speech by Hermann Goering on 15 September 1935 as quoted on p. 257 of Chapter 12 ("National Socialist Shaping of t The Nation" party Congress of Freedom") of the book by Gerd Ruhle, Government Councillor and members of the Reichstag, entitled, "The Third Reich--an Documentary Account of the Reconstruction of the Nation. The Third Year" (Das Dritte Reich-Dokumentarische Darstellung des Aufbaues der Nation--Das Dritte Jahr, 1935) Published by Hummel Publishers in 1936 and approved by the NSDAP Board of Censors. (Parteiamtliche Pruefungskommission)

"God has created the races. He did not want equality and therefore we energetically reject any attempt to falsify the concept of race purity by making it equivalent with racial equality. We have experienced what it means when a people has to live in accordance with the laws of an equality that are alien to its kind and contrary to nature. For this equality does not exist. We have never acknowledged such an idea and therefore must reject it also, as a matter of principle, in our laws, and we must acknowledge that purity of race which Nature and Province have destined".

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
B OF DOCUMENT NO. 3458-PS

Dec. 17, 1945

I, WILLARD E. SKIDMORE , Lt(jg) USNR, 391590, hereby certify that I am thoroughly with the German and English languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document no. 3458-PS.

WILLARD E. SKIDMORE
Lt(jg) USNR
391590

H1224-0147

H1224-0148

From Gr. Doc 437
Read Jan. 8, 1946

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 3460-PS
OFFICE OF U S CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Gritzbach, E.: Hermann Goering, Reden und Aufsaetze.

Munich, 1938; pp. 348-349

"I must address myself with a serious word to the city of Vienna. The city of Vienna can no longer rightfully be called a German city. So many Jews live in this city. Where there are 300,000 Jews, you cannot speak of a German city.

"Vienna must once more become a German city, because it must perform important tasks for Germany in Germany's Ostmark. These tasks lie in the sphere of culture as well as in the sphere of economics. In neither of them can we, in the long run, put up with the Jew.

"This, however, should not only be attempted by inappropriate interference and stupid measures but must be done systematically and carefully. As Delegate for the Four-Year Plan I commission the Reichsstatthalter in Austria jointly with the Plenipotentiary of the Reich, to consider and take any steps, necessary for the redirection of Jewish commerce, i.e., for the Aryanization of business and economic life, and to execute this process in accordance with our laws, legally but inexorably."

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT 3460-PS

December 18, 1945.

I, H.J. HARRISON, All. Exp. F. Permit No. 110609, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document 3460-PS.

H.J. HARRISON
All. Exp. F. Permit No.
110609

H1224-0149

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 3461-PS
OFFICE OF U S CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Goering: Aufbau einer Nation (Reconstruction of a Nation)
Berlin, 1934, p. 91.

"The solution of the Jewish question has not yet been reached. Whatever has happened so far has been a defensive measure in the interest of our people; it was a reaction against the ruin which this race has brought upon us."

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT 3461-PS

December 22, 1945.

I, STEFANIE R. BAER, X 046325, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document 3461-PS.

STEFANIE R. BAER
X 046325

Exhibit USA 583
Filed Jan. 8, 1946

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO. 3471-PS
OFFICE OF U S CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Central office for the
organizations of National
Economy of the NSDAP
W. Keppler in charge

Berlin W 8 21 February 1938
Behrenstrasse 39 A
Fernruf : 16 58 61

General Bodenschatz
Leipziger Platz 11
Berlin W 9

My dear General,

Enclosed I send you the notification which I gave to you by phone already concerning the activity for or of captain L e o p o l d in Austria.

I further take the liberty to enclose also a copy of a report which was sent to me from Austria concerning the possible appointment of Major K l a u s n e r as Landesleiter.

Heil Hitler

Very truly yours

(signed) KEPPLER

2 enclosures

H1224-0150

TRANSL TION OF DOCUMENT NO. 3471-PS
OFFICE OF U S CHIEF OF COUNSEL

21 February 1938

Through information we received at this very moment by means of a long distance call from a man who has the confidence of Dr. S e y s s - I n q u a r t we learn that the following order was given to the functionaries of the party in Austria during Saturday or Sunday.

Leopold is supposed to have had a discussion of a few hours with General Field Marshal G o e r i n g and has received the consent from him that he will return during the next few days to Austria with new authority. Furthermore he makes it known that the attitude he took so far was considered correct and that now the activity in the own lines is to be increased as much as possible. New Minister Dr. Seyss - Inquart is to be attacked first who is supposed to be overthrown in the first place in order to get a man as his successor who is an absolutely reliable instrument in the hand of Leopold.

Furthermore an article appeared in the "Reichspost" that Dr. Tavs not even think of leaving Austria an that an order of that kind would mean an intruding into the conditions of Austria proper.

H1224-0151

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO. 3471-PS
OFFICE OF US CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Copy

Berlin, 21 February 1938

The Reichsfuehrer SS
Chief of the Sicherheitshauptamtes
III 224/1 AZ. 1261/38

Secret

SS - Gruppenfuehrer Wilh. Keppler
Behrenstr. 39 A
Berlin W 8

Re: Appointment of the former gauleiter major Klausner as Landesleiter.

Subject: Long distance call of 20 2 1938

In the following you are notified again in writing about information you received by phone on Febr. 2 1938 :

"By order of the Oberfuehrer K. the Gruppenfuehrer is to be informed as follows for notification of the Fuehrer:

The chiefs of all branches including SA obergruppen fuehrer Lt. Lukesch - who is to be appointed - welcome the appointment of the former Gauleiter Major Klausner to Landseleiter.

The chief of the Sicherheitshauptamts
by order
the chief of the Abwehramtes
signed: Jost
SS Oberfuehrer

H1224-0152

Exhibit USA 582
Filed Jan. 8, 1946

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 3472-PS
OFFICE OF U. S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Central Office
of the
economic - political organizations
of the NSDAP

Chief: W. Keppler

Berlin W 8, 9 February 1938
Behrenstr. 39a
Telephone: 165861

(Pencil note): Transmitted
to Mr. Keppler on 11 Feb 38
by Miss Oest (?)

(initial) G. 11 Feb 38

To the Prime Minister
General Fieldmarshall G o e r i n g

Dear Generalfieldmarshall!

Yesterday, information reached me to the effect, that Landesleiter L e o p o l d also on his part has started negotations with Chancellor (Bundeskanzler) S c h u s c h n i g g. Therupon I have asked the Foreign Office to investigate the truth of this information and, in case it was true, to take care that such negotations not be held because they would merely disturb the proceeding of the other negotations.

Just now I got word from the Foreign Office that they received a report form the embassy in Vienna confirming the facts. I therefore would like to know, whether it would not be more appropriate to forbid Landesleiter L e o p o l d and the other members of the country's leadership (Landesleitung) to negotiate with Chancellor (Bundeskanzler) S c h u s c h n i g g as well as with any Austrian government authorities as to the execution of the pact of 11 July 1936 if it is not done after contacting and in agreement with the authorities in charge in the Reich

Heil Hitler!

Sincerly yours

(s) Wilh. Keppler

* (Pencil note on margin):
Agreed. Minister Hess or Mr. Bormann can give this order best! Keppler ought to ask therefor by telephone!

(Initial)

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT 4372-PS

I, WALTER E. BRILL, 046341, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct Translation of Document 3472-PS.

WALTER E. BRILL
046341

H1224-0153

H1224-0154

Exhibit USA 581
Filed Jan. 8, 1946

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 3473-PS
OFFICE OF U S CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Miss Grundtmann

Phone: 165861
settled by tel.
7th Jan 37
(sign) Limberger

Keppler should be told by telephone:

(pencil note) 1.) He should do everything to avoid the resignation of Counsiller of State Dr. Seyss - Inquart and State- Minister (Bundesminister) Glaise von Horstenau. If some difficulties should arise, Mr. Seyss - Inquart should come to him first of all.

2.) Mr. Leopold has already been ordered but has not received the permission to leave his country at the present. The general (der Herr Generaloberst) intends to receive him on the 14th or 15th of January, so that he can give him very definite instructions.

Carinhall, January 6th 1938

(signed) G. Limberger

Berlin W8, January 6 1938
Behrenstr. 39a
Phone. 165861

Main Office
of the
economic political organisations
of the NSDAP

Chief: W. Keppler

Prime Minister General Goering
Secretary General
Arr. (Stamp)
Jan 6 - 1938

To
Prime Minister General Goering

Berlin W 8
Leipziger Strasse 3.

Most honorable General!

Counciller of State Dr. S e y s s - Inq u a r t has sent a courier to me with the report that his negotations with the Federal Chancellor Dr. S c h u s c h n i g g have run aground, so that he feels compelled to return the mandate entrusted to him. Dr. S e y s s - I n q u a r t desires to have a discussion with me regarding this, before he acts accordingly.

May I ask your advice, whether at this moment such a step-entailing authomatically also the resignation of the Federal Minister G l a i s e von H o r s t e n a u appears indicated or whether I should put forth efforts to postpone such an action.

Furhtermore I have information to the effect that Landesleiter Captain L e o p o l d deposed Dr. J u r y his deputy, while the latter was here in Germany.

Captain L e c p cl d is attempting again and again to make his own policy which is in opposition to the wishes of the decisive authorities in the Reich, and continuously obstructs the pending negotiations carried on by Dr. Se y s s - I n q u a r t , Dr. J u r y and the consultants for national - political affairs (volkspolitischen Referenten).

I take the liberty to pass on to you a copy of a directive of military nature which incidentally came into my hands. It discloses further measures concerning the German border.

May I once more ask you, honorable General, for an audience in order to discuss my further activity in the field of economic politics.

Heil Hitler!

Yours sincerly devoted

(signed) Keppler

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT 3473-PS

I, WALTER E. BRILL, 046341, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document 3473-PS.

WALTER E. BRILL
046341

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO. 3474-PS
OFFICE OF U S CHIEF OF COUNSEL

H1224-0156

Ministerpraesident
Generaloberst GOERING
Chef des Stabsamtes

Berlin W 8
Leipziger Str 3
Phone: A 2 Flora 6451
2 December 1936.

Note for the files on the discussion on December 2, 1936. 11 A.M. - 12.05 P.M.

Present :

Generaloberst Goering
General der Flieger Milch
Generalleutnant Kesselring
" Rüdel
Generalmajor Stumpf
" Christiansen
" Volkmann
Ministerialdirigent Fisch
Generalleutnant Witzlebeh
Generalmajor Kitzinger
Oberst Udet
Oberst Bodenschatz

Goering:

World press excited about the landing of 5000 German volunteers in Spain. Official complaint by Great Britain; she takes up connection with France.

Italy suggests that Germany and Italy send each one division groundtroops to Spain. It is, however, necessary, that Italy as interested Mediterranean power issues a political declaration first. A decision can only be excepted in a few days.

The general situation is very serious. Russia wants the war. England rearms speedily. Command therefore: Beginning to-day "höchste Einsatzbereitschaft" - regardless of financial difficulties. Göring takes over full responsibility.

"Ruhe" till 1941 is desirable. However, we cannot know whether there will be implications before. We are already in a state of war, it is only that no shot is being fired so far.
Fieldmarshal v. Blomberg will be informed by the Führer to-morrow, accordingly.

Beginning January 1, 1937 all factories for aircraft production run "mobilmachungsmässig".

More money is to be spent on aircraft, equipment, implements, supplies, less for extending barracks and airports.

Colonel Udet is asked whether the Expeditionary group Oberstleutnant v. Richthofen works satisfactorily in Spain. Udet answers in the affirmative. Göring ordered that .... is not burdened too much with correspondence. Göring recommends closest collaboration with Austria. Not too old and not too new supplies shall be given away. Austria willnever fight against us. Austria ought to have pilots, engineers and fitters trained in Germany. Austria shall above all, extend her ground forces. Our interest must always be in the foreground. Göring wants to be informed shortly on the measures taken by the "Amtschef". Göring discusses the tasks of the various air plane-types, furthermore the standardization of engines, purchase of foreign engines, questions of [illegible] supplies, further extension of the anti-aircraft artillery.

([illegible]) [illegible]

furthermore the standarization of engines, purchase of foreign engines, questions of the budget, supplies, further extension of the anti-aircraft artillery.

(signed) BODENSCHATZ

- - - - - - - - - - -

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 3474-PS

4 January 1946

I, WALTER E. BRILL, 046341, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document 3474-PS.

WALTER E. BRILL
046341

H1224-0157

H1224-0158

Exhibit USA 515
Filed Jan. 8, 1946

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 3568-PS
OFFICE OF U S CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Job No 508

The Reichsfuehrer SS
SS Main Office - Executive Office

Berlin W35 25.7.42
Luetzowstrasse 48/49
P.O. Box No. 43.

III I(a) - Az : 9b - R/Br.
please quote above reference together with date in your answer.

Re: The enrolment into the SS of Reichsminister Albert Speer born 19.3.05.

Re: none
Enclosures: -1-

To

The SS Head Office for Race and Settlement
Berlin

Please find enclosed the family tree (Ahnentafel) of Reich Minister Albert Speer. It is requested that this be passed on for further attention and examination.

Reich Minister Speer was enrolled as an SS man on the Personal Staff of the Reichsfuehrer SS under SS No. 46 104 with effect from 20.7.1942, by order of the Reichsfuehrer SS.

The Reichsfuehrer SS does not desire that Reichsminister Speer should be registered at the moment because the documents for his enrolment are in themselves quite incomplete. It is therefore requested that the Records for the family tree (Ahnentafel) be applied for by the Office from the authorities in question (Registar's Office etc).

Your communication is requested after the examination so that the SS-AV-Certificate can be forwarded to be made out.

By Order

signed: illegible
SS Sturmbannfuehrer

(Stamp)

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT 3568-PS
OFFICE OF U S CHIEF OF COUNSEL
(CONT'd)

Race and Settlement-Questionnaire
(Women: fill out where applicable)

Name and Surname
of the member of the SS
who is submitting the
questionnaire for himself,
or his fiancee or wife.

Rank ..... SS No. .....

Sip. No. .....

NAME (write legibly): SPEER, Albert
in SS since Autumn 1932 Rank: ..... SS Unit: .....

Motor
in SA from 1.3.1931 until Autumn 1932. in HJ from ... until .....

Membership Number in Party. 474 481. SS No. .....
born on 19.3.1905 in Mannheim. District. .....

State. Baden. present age. 37. Religious Belief: believing in God, non-confessional (Gottglaeubig)

Present domicile; Berlin-Wannsee. Residence: Inselstrasse 18.

Profession and Position. Architect.

Have you any claim on Public Assistance? --

Is there any prospect of change in profession? .....

Attainments and certificates other than professional (e.g. Driving license, Sports Badge or Certificate): Driving license.

Nationality: German.

Honary Positions: Senator of the Reich Chamber for Culture, Praesidialrat of the German Chamber d.b.K. Member of the Pr. Arts Academy and the Academy of Architecture.

Service in the old Army: Regiment.	...	from	to ....
Volunteer Corps.	...	....	....
Reichswehr.	...	....	....
Civil Police.	...	....	....
New Wehrmacht.	...	....	....

Last rank.
Fighting at the Front .... to .... wounded ....

Orders and Decorations including Life-saving medals: Goldenes Ehrenzeichen.

Personal Status (single, widowed, divorced - since): married, since 28.8.1928

Of what religion is the applicant: believer in God, non-confessional. the future fiancee (Wife) ? : believer in God, non-confessional

(In addition to all the conventional ones any other belief which is gottglaeubi (belief in God) will be racognised.)

It is intended to have a church wedding as well as a civil wedding: Yes/No.
Was there a church wedding as well as a civil wedding: Yes/No.

H1224-0159

H1224-0160

If so of what religious form?

Has a marriage loan been applied for? Yes/No

To what authorities (exact address)? ...

When was the application made? .....

Was the marriage loan approved? Yes/No.

Is the marriage loan to be applied for. Yes/No.

To what authorities (exact address)?

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. 3568-PS

4 January 1946

I, CATHERINE BEDFORD, 11561, hereby certify that the above is a true and correct translation of Document No. 3568-PS; and that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages.

CATHERINE BEDFORD
11561

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO. R-133
OFFICE OF US CHIEF OF COUNSEL

S E C R E T

Berlin 27 July 1939

H1224-0161

LF 1
Az. 57 h LF 1 No. 3398/39 secret

Note
on a conference on 25 July 1939 with the
General Field Marshal in Westerland.
- - - - - - - -
(illegible notations)

Present :Generaloberst Milch
State Secretary Koerner
" " Neumann
" " Dr. Landfried
" " v. Burgsdorf
Lt. Col (Gen Staff) Hünermann
Col (Gen Staff) Ploch
Min. Rat Mueller
Air Chief Staff Engineer Tschersich
Air Staff Engineer Diederichs
Ob. Reg. Rat v. Wedelstedt and Lt Col. Conrad
Generalmajor Thomas

1) In a rather long statement the field marshal explained that the incorpation of Bohemia and Moravia into the German economy had taken place, among other reasons, to increase the Germ German War potential by exploitation of the industry there. Letters as the decree of the Reich Minister for Economics - S 10 402/39 of 10 July 39 - as well as a letter with similar meaning to the JUNKERS firm, which might possibly lower the kind and extent of the armament measures in the Protectorate are contrary to this principle. If it is necessary to issue such directives, this should be done only with his consent. In any case, he insists, in agreement with the directive by Hitler, that the war potential of the Protectorate is definitely to be exploited in part or in full and is to be directed towards mobilization as soon as possible.

Since, with full use of the industry of the Protectorate difficulties of money transfer would exist until the change to the same currency, a way out must be found for that. According to the declaration of state secretary Dr. Landfried the same procedure as in Slovakia might be applied, i.e. "Deposit of Reich treasury notes to cover the amounts of Kronen which are not balanced. But anyway, the change Reichsmark is planned for 1 April 1940."

2) As regards the question of leaving foreign currency of export firms in the Protectorate, which was brought up by a letter of the Reich protector to the field marshal because of a sale of the firm Walter, the field marshal consented to its remaining in the Protectorate, provided it is used 100% for the furtherance of the German war potential. In this connection State Secretary v. Burgsdorf explained that two weeks ago a supervisory office for foreign currency traffic had been established in the Protectorate, whose activity could direct the use of foreign exchange. State Secretary Dr. Landfried proposed further to appoint a plenipotentiary for the Czech National Bank who should regulate the foreign exchange allotment for armament purposes only. State Secretary v. Bergsdorf was doubtful about this regulation.

3) In order to arrange the mutual merchandise traffic for armament purposes with the lease possible friction, the field marshal emphasized the necessity of leaving this merchandise free of duty.

4) The field [illegible] d first of all the following

4) The Field Marshal underscored first of all the following principle for export questions:

a) Investigation concerning necessity of secrecy
b) " of the receiving country
c) " of "what is offered"
d) " of the own need for the merchandise to be given

The offer to Italy regarding delivery of 88mm AA was outlined by the Field Marshal as follows:

Delevieries are only permissible to a certain extent after reaching the peak of capacity ordered for our purposes. It is necessary that Italy deliver to us the raw materials necessary for Italian deliveries, i. e. some what more than is necessary for production.

Concerning the various countries the Field Marshal consented to the work on the following contracts on the basis of the talk by Ministerialrat Müller, and made the following decisions resp:

a) Bulgaria:
Delivery of Czech planes (about 148 and ground equipment) is to be made quickly. The contract for German equipment (10 Me 109 and 10 DO 215) can be worked on in 4-6 weeks, since Bulgaria can not be excluded from this equipment because of the deliveries to Rumania and Yugoslavia.

b) Rumania and Yugoslavia:

The Field Marshal was first informed that the Czech equipment is refused and that, due to the situation, the ordering countries can not suffer postponement of the date delivery to Spring 1940. Because of the special agreement concerning petroleum deliveries, the Field Marshal therefore permitted the planned contract with Rumania, i.e. delivery of the samples, which was announced already earlier to the Field Marshal, will begin in Autumn of this year.

The field marshal makes the contract with Yugoslavia dependent in the answer to certain questions which had remained unanswered by the prince regent and the Yugoslav government resp. Concerning these he would write to the prince regent personally. They concern the fact that Yugoslavia did not leave the League of Nations, and fortification works at the Italian and German frontiers in the presence of French officers. However, he was not apposed to deliver at first 5 Me 109 to show our basic willingness. For the rest, the Field Marshal expressly empowered the Ministerialrat Müller, to instruct the Yugoslav military attach in Berlin that his consent to the contract would have to depend on the reply to certain questions which he would transeint by letter to the prince regent.

c) Turkey:
The Field Marshal made no negative decision regarding the delivery of five Me 109 to Turkey till the final clearance of the situation. His declarations about that were to be understood thus: that the delivery could be made if it seemed opportune according to the situation.

Finally, the field marshal stated about the treatment of exports generally that the buying countries should be informed that the political situation had changed very markedly, and they would have to understand that Germany would now have

H1224-0163

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO. R-133
Cont'd

to look out for itself first. The recurring lately expressed objections by foreign countries about offers of English Spitfires etc. should be answered in the vein that we are not angered by such bugs, and that we could only recommend making them

(signed) MULLER

- - - - - - - - - - - - - -

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. R-133

13 November 1945

I, ERNST M. COHN Pfc, 33925738, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document No. R-133.

ERNST M. COHN
Pfc. 33925738

H1224-0164

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT R-140
OFFICE OF U.S. CHIEF OF COUNSEL

The Reich Air Minister
and Commander-in-Chief of the Air Force
Aide-de-Camp
Major Conrath

Berlin, W.8, 11 July 38
3 Leipziger Str.
Staff Headquarters
Telephone 12 00 44

S E C R E T

Staff HQ - Dept II No. 134/38 secret

To
General U d e t

Enclosed I transmit a copy of the shorthand minutes on the conference with the airplane manufacturers on 8 July 1938 at Carinhall.

(Signed) Conrath
Major

1 Enclosure.

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT NO.R-140
OFFICE OF U.S.CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Dr. Eggeling/Ba

Conference
with the gentlemen of the airplane industry
at Karinhall
8th July 1938. 1130

Field Marshal G o e r i n g :

Gentlemen: May I first welcome you here and express my satisfaction that we have come here together again to discuss our problems. Today I invited you into the country, in order to have you later on as my guests, thus giving expression to the feelings of solidarity between us.

Before we start our discussions I am in duty bound to commemorate here too the man who, being one of you, always was among the first to press for the development of German aviation and of the German Air Force. It is a grievous loss which the aviation industry has suffered through the departure of your member, Mr. Hellmut Hirth.
(Those present rise from their seats.)

I thank you.

Page 2
Gentlemen: The situation today does not differ from that which existed at the time of my last address except perhaps for the fact that it is even more serious today. You are aware that today it is no longer Germany on whose attitude the continuance of peace depends. It is Czechoslovakia who threaten the peace like the sword of Damocles. We do not know what will happen. But you are aware, Gentlemen, that, in case something happens there, Germany will not be able to be disinterested. As long ago as May it became manifest that raving individuals of Czechoslovakia thought the time had come to provoke Germany while hoping that such provocation would start a world war, in which one side was probably to consist of France and England, Russia, America as the main forces, while Germany perhaps assisted by small countries interested in areas of Czechoslovakia on the other side. They hoped to catch just the last moment when conditions were still favorable enough to overwhelm Germany. We have not been provoked, and probably the other side also was too anxious for peace after all to allow further provocation. There can be no doubt that England does not wish for war nor does France. As to America, there is no certainty on this question. The economic situation of America is hopeless. Therefore the Americans might hope to do big business again by providing all the munitions for the enemies of Germany, while not themselves actively intervening for the time being, but by dispatching many airmen at least as volunteers.
Page 3.
The Jew furthermore agitates for war all over the world. So much is clear: Antisemitism has risen now in every country as a logical consequence of the over-increase of the number of Jews in these countries, and the Jew can expect salvation only if he succeeds in letting loose a general world war. If I mention the Jewish agitation for war, I have a good reason to do so, since the Jew who dominates the bulk of the world press is in a position to use it for psychological propaganda.

With regard to England too, we have to acknowledge the existence of some, I don't want to say, readiness for war, but of a certain feeling of the unavoidability of war which is wide spread. To be added is the fact that wide circles in England

H1224-0165

T.K.

take this stand: the last thing we are prepared to bear was the incorporation of Austria, but we are not ready to allow any further enlargement of Germany's power. Beyond this they fear that once we have pocketed Czechoslovakia, we will attack Hungary, the Romanian oil wells etc. Moreover since there are democratic countries on the one hand, and authoritarian ones on the other, there is enough inflammable matter in the world anyway. When, how and where this inflammable matter will explode, no one among us can say. It may happen within some months, but it may also take some years. At present the situation is this that Czechoslovakia has promised the Sudeten Germans to meet them half way. I am convinced that they will satisfy no more than some of their unimportant demands. Such action on their part would probably suit our policy best, since in this case we could put the entire responsibility on England because she has engaged herself so deeply in this business.

Briefly, gentlemen, this is what is happening on the political plane. In this circle, however, we have less to do with politics. I told you these things only in order to provide some background. What we have to discuss are the conclusions which have to be drawn, especially with regard to the Air Force. Everywhere we observe indeed immense preparations for mobilization, and I expect nobody to become frightened to death. If I judge the preparations for mobilization which are undertaken by other nations by their press publications, in which these countries, I dare say, shoot their mouth off, one might feel inclined to get the jitters. But if they write there: "England is to produce within the next year so and so many thousands of first line planes of which so and so many will be ready a month, France will build this and that, Russia is now again to produce another 100,000 planes and to train so and so many airmen", then think of the difficulties which we have to overcome and translate what we have into a democratic system, and then you will be able to make a correct guess. I am perfectly convinced gentlemen, that what we can produce of new goods within a year, England is able to produce with the utmost pains in two, perhaps three years. This is how I judge the situation, taking into consideration the establishment of factories etc.

You heard tall stories about the English shadow factories. But what happened in fact? These people did not even complete the conversion of their existing factories, let alone the erection of shadow factories, the essence of which is that they are not working today, but may be switched on tomorrow. And how far have they gone with their second great project for the motor-or-plane industry which this Automobile King Nuffield has set up? The latest report is this that this Honourable Lord now has made up in his mind, and almost decided where he will build these shadow factories, therefore in the best possible case has chosen their location. You know how much it takes to build a big factory, and I think, it cannot be done in such a hurry. If on the one hand they introduce the 40hr week or even go down to 35 hours a week, and on the other hand we are working 10 or 11 or 12 hours a day instead of 8 hours, then this discrepency must at the end favor the man who works longer, and work is what matters for results.

But still we have to keep in mind that from the long term view these people too certainly will have some results, and before all that England and France do not stand alone on the opposite side, but are always in a position to draw upon the immense reservoir for raw materials in America.

If I compare the Air Forces of the principal countries which may become our enemies (by which I always mean England and France), I am bound to day:

H1224-0166

we have done marvellous work indeed! In 1933 we were at zero, today, 1938, at the end of the year, Germany will have a complete first line strength equal to that of England's strength plus ..... Thus we are superior in quantity, too, and as to quality we are equal, even superior. This is an enormous success. It is a miracle that we were able to do it.

And here you deserve great credit, gentlemen, for having succeeded in establishing factories from nothing, and finally producing in them planes and motors which are equal to-day and partly superior.

Altogether, I consider the German Air Force as being ahead compared with the English as well as with the French. Our task is, not only to keep, but also to increase this advantage. For if it comes to the decision, we shall again be opposed by a great multitude, considering the world reservoir at the disposal of the enemies. We have to endeavor, therefore, to increase our advantage, at least in the air, by producing highest quality and at the same
Page 7 time in enormous masses, and I am firmly resolved to take every measure which can and will provide us with permanent superiority in the air.

It is for this reason that I have to approach you again, gentlemen, with a demand to provide loyally and passionately those conditions which will allow me to increase that advantage. I am aware that there are great difficulties, and one of these difficulties consisted and still consists in the so-called shortage ofraw materials. Gentlemen, shortage of raw materials !'Indeed' everyone has less iron than he needs. But if you come to think of it that we now manufacture almost 2.000 tons of raw iron a month, then that is something immense. We are to-day producing more iron than France and England combined. Only our needs are so immensely great. The same applies to aluminum.. I increased our requirements for aluminum under the Air Ministry plans, later in the frame of the Four Years Plan, from 32.000 tons a year to 150.000 tons a year as of today ; then after the end of this year 180.000 tons, and by the end of 1939, to 288.000 tons. And even this will not be quite enough. Now you can roughly estimate, if you compare the aluminum quota at the disposal of the rest of the world, how much they can produce from aluminum. Although one should not forget that there are many cases where we are forced to use aluminum, while other people can use other materials owing to their richness in raw materials. Yet much has been done also with
Page 8 regard to raw materials, and if I just altered the contingents again and allotted to the Armed Forces 500.000 and lately even 550.000, possibly even 600.000 tons, these are also enormous figures.

We shall make it alright. What matters is only that everybody knows he has to be careful, that material is short, but that the manufacture must not be impeded. Everything often depends on the right distribution of materials, in order to balance temporary shortages and prevent stoppages of work. Moreover the demands often are for much more than is really needed or is said to be needed.

H1224-0167

H1224-0168

Now, if I touch once more on the political problem, this is because you felt the consequences of the political situation in the increase of the program, and that we have to request that everybody do his best, and that all our labor supply must be used. We are fully embarked on the way to mobilisation-capacity and shall not be able for years to deviate from it; on the contrary, we may have to increase our speed under certain conditions until we reach full mobilisation capacity.

Gentlemen, please consider the far reaching consequences; you ought to be aware that the smallest faults and omissions cannot be caught up with, and repaired, if we work with such speed. I have to ask you therefore to be in a state of the greatest readiness. It is the fate of Germany which is at stake. Your job is not to be politicians. But if you sometime have a quiet half hour to ponder on the history of the era after
Page 9 the world war, you will become convinced that, in case a combination of powers today would succeed a second time in overwhelming Germany, the end of the Reich would be there. These people have been forewarned now, they know what a germany totally prostrated can create anew, if she only remains united. This is what they have learned, and they will act accordingly.

Gentlemen, the following is my personal belief: Wherever the conflagration may begin - if then Germany must go to war - this will be the greatest hour of destiny ever since there has been a German history. And the possibility of victory indeed exists. It depends solely on our own power, on the manner in which we mobilise that power, and on the degree to which everybody is resolved to do his bit, convinced as he is that afterwards every individual will experience personally the advantages as well as the disadvantages of the situation. Believe me, Gentlemen: once Germany has again lost a new War, it will be no use for you to go and say: Yes I did not want this war, I was always opposed to it, moreover I was opposed to the system and never wanted collaborate with it. You will be dismissed with scornful laughter. You are Germans: the others don't care two hoots whether you wanted to collaborate or not.

We have to see things as they are. The situation being what it is, I believe there is still a 10% to 15% possibility for a relatively small scale action, but I am convinced that a 80, 85, 90% chance exists that a
Page 10 greater disaster will occur anyhow, and that we shall have to fight the great battle of which I am not afraid. The only thing that matters is that we shall not collapse again. What matters is that everybody knows: Victory can be ours only if we work to an immensely higher extent. We have to replace by men everything the other side has more in raw materials. This is why the determination of every single German has to be much stronger than that of the enemy in question. And the determination of a nation that knows its very existence is at stake, will necessarily be stronger than that of people who are only half resolved and only go along in the war, and the agitation, etc.

Those are not phrases, gentlemen. For God's sake do not understand them as nationalistic blusterings, you would do me a great injustice. I am passionately convinced that everything I tell you is an absolute, gigantic truth. I am truly of the opinion: we shall not be able to save our fatherland unless we stake all our passions.

Believe me, gentlemen, I have now learned during these years, what it means to bear continually the responsibility for a nation. If you are concerned about your work, this is indeed a grave responsibility. But what it means if a man is aware that on his own counsel, decision, judgment, and deliberation lastly depends the fate of the nation, this is beyond your im-
Page 11 agination. You may be certain, seldom indeed do I have any other thought in my mind. Actually I have to force myself to think of other things; all the time my thoughts are circling around one thing: when will war come? Shall we win? What can we do? I assure you, gentlemen, it is hour after hour that I ponder: What can we do? I am well aware that there are still

infinitely more things we could do. I am aware that many things are not yet ready, I am aware of the many obstacles in our way, and I am very sorry that I am unable to do everything as quickly as I would like. I wished, however, I might be able to say later on with regard to the task which has been given to me: Well, every preparation which a man can make has been made by us. It is a bad thing if a man has to confess, when the battle has started: Damn it, you could have done this before. This responsibility rests heavily on me, you may believe me.

This is why I again beg of you with all my heart, gentlemen: Consider yourself an industry which has the duty to create an Air Force which is most intimately connected with that Air Force. Do understand that all personal interests take second place. What does your work mean compared with the fate of the nation? What value have after all the considerations which will often occur to you: Well, what are we to do afterwards, if now the capacities become so much inflated? Would it not be better to go a little more slowly in order to distribute the work better? Such thoughts would prove nothing - don't take this amiss, gentlemen, but an extremely petty character. What does it matter, if there will come a day when you
Page 12 have to manufacture chamber pots instead of planes? That is of no importance if there is only now a chance for Germany to win the struggle.

For if I spoke so far briefly of the fate which would befall us if we lost the war, I may be allowed now to mention what will happen if we win it. Then Germany will be the greatest power in the world, then it is Germany who dominates the world market, then will be the hour when Germany is a rich nation. For this goal, however, we have to undertake risks, we have to stake our bets. This is why I once again demand of you: all the questions ruminating in your heads, all ideas of external or internal importance, any doubts whether you can obtain higher prices, whether you might make insufficient profits, etc. all this is perfectly beside the point. What matters is only this: What is the production of the works; how many motors are being made and in what time, and of what quality are these motors and planes? Only this is important. And even if you know what you are doing now may mean that within three years your firm will collapse, you will have to do it all the same. For if Germany collapses, who will dare to tell me to my face that his shop will go on? Out of the question! If only this fact would be understood by the whole of the German economy - although the dictate of Versailles in 1918 should indeed have been a good teacher to them - and if all would understand that nobody here exists by himself, but that everybody stands and falls with Germany's existence! It does not matter if someone says: I disapprove entirely of the National Socialist system. I don't care, let him disapprove,
Page 13 it is still the system which at this moment decides Germany's fate. This is why he has willy-nilly to cooperate. Therefore I repeat once more: only that nation which stakes everything on its armaments and draws all consequences from this fact, will be able to continue its existence.

Gentlemen, I have no reason, and this is gratifying to me, to complain of the airplane industry but to praise, to acknowledge, and to thank. You went my way on the whole, though at the start one or the other did not quite catch what it meant and you did really wonderful work, in some factories quite extraordinary things were done. Thus just with regard to the airplane industry I have no reason for complaints, thank God. Just this fact permits me to say, especially as it cannot happen in this industry, not for a second, and I mean second, would I hesitate - as I proved with regard to another matter - to intervene at once and to confiscate at once the whole business in case I should come to the conclusion that he does not understand that he can see the world only under the toilet-seat perspective of his own enterprise, and cannot look further. Such a fellow is a no'er-do-well. That fellow must go. By a stroke of my pen he would lose his business and his property. But as I said before, and I am very gratified to state this once again, that the airplane industry performed quite excellent work.

H1224-0169

H1224-0170

But, gentlemen, we must not rest on our laurels, our performance must encourage us to perform still more. If I said some moments ago that the raw material situation is and will remain difficult, the situation regarding labor supply is perhaps still more difficult. This is by no means surprising. Imagine, in 1933 we had almost 7 million unemployed, and today the greatest problem of Germany is where to find enough workers to complete the most urgent tasks. I believe, a leadership which led to such results has some justification for its existence. If today some degree of prosperity exists in other countries, if for instance a country like Sweden is in excellent circumstances, then it is very wrong if this country scoffs on Germany, since it is indebted for its prosperity to nobody but Germany and her re-armament. Anyway this labor supply problem is difficult indeed. It was with difficulty that I made decided on the law enacted recently, a law which intervenes to a truly enormous extent in the freedom of movement of every individual. If a worker can be told today you are finished here, pack up your things and start tomorrow at such and such a place, this means indeed quite something! If despite this fact I resolved to issue this law, you ought to be able to comprehend how difficult the situation is, but also that we shall dodge no issue. As long as there are any chances of balancing the situation, I shall take these chances.

As for the airplane industry, here again of course the most difficult problem is that of providing skilled workers. But we have devised means and ways to attain our goal.

(An admonition follows on the training of as many apprentices as possible.)

Page 16 Beyond this, gentlemen, I want you to be perfectly clear, today already, how you will run your business when war comes. The earlier you can make clear proposals on this to me, the earlier you know yourselves what you want, including the changes in personnel, what people you want to get rid of, and what people you want to have, the earlier you will be all right, and the less danger there will be of work being held up. If you act in this way, we should be able to apply in time to the Inspectorates for Recruiting for deferments on the basis of your claims, so that the moment mobilisation starts, everything will have been arranged already You will then be in a position to know: when mobilisation starts, so-and-so will be taken away, but you will also know who will replace him. I should like to have this arranged almost by names. I want every man and woman to know: on the first, the second, the third day of mobilisation I shall have to do this and that, so that the order of events will not be: the airplane industry will be allotted a certain number out of the bulk of available labor, etc., and then the allotments will be altered four or five times. No, this will have to be done from the beginning, by names. I want the airplane industry to take again the first place and go ahead by appointing a special employee in each factory who has nothing to do but to make the arrangements for mobilisation, so that every shop knows accurately: I shall lose so-and-so, he will be replaced by so-and-so. But with regard to those people who cannot be spared by any means you must apply for deferment already, so that I can order their deferment. If this is being done accurately and executed carefully, you will see what a help that will be. For it is quite clear: there will be a great to-do the day of the mobilisation, and every man will then have to know what he will have to do. And with regard to juvenile labor, to apprentices, I want you to make your decisions also with regard for the mobilisation; it might be advisable to accept already many more apprentices then you would accept normally.

(Some remarks follow on the reorganisation of the Air Ministry and the appointment of Udet)

Page 18 At this point I want to prevent the spreading of a fairy tale in case it should exist. If you'd think that since I have so much to do, I am more or less above things, do not trouble about them and do not know what is going on, you are mistaken; first of all I am seeing the Chief of the C.-Office once a week if not more frequently, and I can assure you that

H1224-0171

nothing of importance is being ordered, really nothing which has not been discussed with, and agreed upon by me first. No sample is dispatched, no order given without my consent, I decide personnally upon each piece to be delivered on the basis of these conferences. Every
Page 19 measure, therefore, which the Chief of the C-Office takes, has been previously discussed in conference lasting many hours.

You know of the new method which General Udet wishes to apply. This method naturally calls for sacrifices. They are necessary however. For what is it which matters? We must have, firstly the best types, secondly as few of them as possible. Thirdly, types which can be built within a short time, which can be built in good quality, and which can be built cheaply. This is, I believe, the result of planning for almost a year. For it has been almost a year since I started the devliberations which led to the method we wish to apply now.

It goes without saying, gentlemen, we shall communicate to you the demands which we have with regard to the machines we want. You shall have a chance to build that machine in free competition. Then we shall have to decide what machine it is which suits us. And this today is often very difficult to decide. Often we had to ponder very long when we had to decide between two types. Either machine had its advantages, the one these, the other one those. If one has to choose between two machines of which one is good, the other less good, the choice is easy. But to decide on one of them. If both machines are good, this is difficult.
Page 20 And if we chose one, and refused the other, this in many cases did not mean that the one refused was not good; perhaps it was just as good, but some small advantage of the chosen machine tipped the scale after we had considered everything.

But I cannot allow the manufacture of several types. I am well aware of the objections to this opinion. They have been known to me already since the last war.

Page 21 One should not create monopolies, and I don't want to do so. I never asked you, gentlemen, to work in your construction offices in a given direction, i.e. to do everything by order, but there you are free, and every firm is free to produce something better at any moment. But if I made up my mind after the most thorough deliberations and discussions with all responsible people, to choose the bomber, which is to be the backbone of the Air Force, which is to be produced in greatest numbers, then I have the duty to arrange that this type is also produced in the shortest possible time. Gentlemen, the kind of licensing method which we had so far, was never very pleasing to me, for we were forced to acknowledge that a series of accidents - to mention a minor detail - was caused for the following reasons: that with the firms which had licensed things did not quite fit in some place, something stuck, and they gave it one more little jerk, and the part just got in; by such methods tensions were created which later had fatal results. It cannot go on like it did so far, that we say we gave them the license, and let the firm construct and fit the licensed parts. If we have now chosen a certain type, the firm which developed this type carries the central responsibility for the construction and the completion of this type, even where part of the work is done by licensed firms. And the other
Page 22 firms shall produce this type until another type appears in our factories which may perhaps have been constructed by a different firm and which may replace the older type. But the firm which has developed the type chosen by me is responsible to me for the following: that firstly it will be provided the gadgets (Vorrichtungen) drawings, materials and everything else which is necessary, in order to deliver at the end of the manufacturing process the same type in every factory. And this, gentlemen, is the more important because I no longer order: you, please produce licence 88, and the other produce the so-and-so licence, but I shall tell you: <u>You</u> produce nothing but the right wing, <u>you</u> nothing but the left wing, <u>you</u> nothing but the glider appliance, <u>you</u> the rump, etc. and at the end

everything must fit together. And if I proceed to produce the highest possible number of planes, then, gentlemen, you will have to understand that everybody has to march in step. For these small parts are to be produced in various places, and then they must fit and the firm which developed that type will be responsible to me that they do fit. Not the greatest profit ought to matter for you, but before all your more work and better results. There can be no doubt about that.

Gentlemen, I am aware that there are quite a number of objections against this method. But there are objections against every method. But if I balance the advantage and the disadvantages, taking into due consideration the security problem which is so important, I finally come to the conclusion that for the time being this is the right way, which is bound absolutely to bring superiority over the enemy, and I should like to add here over the democratic, the leaderless enemy, for in England it is possible that Lord Nuffield says any plane will be built, if I am not to produce the plane which I want then I shall not produce at all. Yes, such things he can say in England, but not in Germany, thank God, and I only hope he says such things: may God preserve him in this condition. In such a case it goes without saying that one day he will fly around at the front with the most varied types. This is just what will make him inferior. Since we are provided with the principle of organisation, I really would be quite insane if I did not organise these powers and made use of the chance which fate allowed me to have.

. . . . . .
. . . . . .
. . . . . .

Page 26 Above all, gentlemen, and you will remember that I told you this already in 1933, if you are planning for a new type, the serial manufacture of the current type must not be disturbed by it. Never! These two tasks must be entirely separated from each other. For I know the difficulties inherent in the development of a new type. If I allow this work to interfere, at any stage, with the manufacturing of the serial type, then disadvantages to the serial type are unavoidable. Therefore, full separation must be provided and care must be taken that the serial manufacture never suffers from the work for new development, and neither must the new development be hampered by serial production. For you are fully aware how important it is to develop the new types. It is always decisive that a plane which has been constructed, must be flown as soon as possible. For not until it has been flown, and with which calculations were made are flown, does a basis for further development really exist.

Gentlemen, if later on a history of the German Air Force and its development is written, the writer will call the step which General Udet made with regard to the Ju 88 and in which we followed him, a magnificent action undertaken by the German aviation technique. This is perfectly
Page 27 clear to me. This is why I ask you again to forget your personal ambitions for the benefit of this greatest task of all. You may well be proud, gentlemen, that today we are already in a position to entrust industry with such a task. For I hope I may be sure without any reserve that after adopting this system, even if you were sorry that you had to do it, you will work for it loyally, and that our work will not slacken or be hampered by some dislike on your part - to be careful in my expression. I hope I may rather be convinced that you will tell yourselves, well, I should have preferred a different way, but since the decision was made, there is only one thing: to take up this method with all the power and force at my command.

I mentioned already how glad I am to be able to express my deep satisfaction with what you have created up to now. What is it that we have brought about? We have succeeded in changing a small airplane industry which barely existed with a few types, which was not in a position to keep step with modern development, which had to stop production altogether for some years, etc., into an efficient airplane industry of our very own without foreign patents, foreign licences, and by using exclus-

ively tools of our own. And then came the reorientation which was completed in a single year, moreover the production of modern planes, produced now already in serial types. I believe, gentlemen, we can be proud of the way which the airplane industry has traversed, and this is just what entitles me to trust you and to request of you what I had to request today.

Page 29 (More admonitions follow to obey orders.)

And finally one more thing. You will not be able to fulfill your duties unless you have a staff which collaborates enthusiastically, and workers who are fully prepared to assist in your task, and I beg of you, consider your workers your colleagues, men by whose intensified zeal alone you will be able to reach your goal. Provide me with this great joy as well, that I may be able to call the German airplane industry an example for the right treatment of the workers. We shall not be able to solve our great problems and to use all this capacity for work unless the worker feels that he is indeed valued at his full worth and treated as a member of the team. On the other hand, gentlemen, you must not close your eyes with regard to certain nihilistic plans if such should become evident. Less than anywhere else can we afford in the airplane industry to allow propaganda hostile to the state. For where does verbal propaganda and action begin? True, if I address the Forces, I Page 30 have of course to deny every time that sabotage ever occurs. For if I did not do so, if I would allow such considerations to be seriously considered by the Forces, I should shake and undermine all their confidence. The Forces must not even start such considerations. But your duty, gentlemen, is to take care of it that ideas of sabotage etc. disappear entirely from the brains of your personnel even should the individual not agree with our State of today. It is here that we have to be very careful so that nothing can happen for this is where, as I said before, the confidence in your products stands or falls.

If I finally touch the problem of female labor, this is because I am of the opinion that we have to tackle the problem of female labor again in case of mobilisation. Gentlemen, here you must use your brains. A woman is not a man, and it is not enough to say, instead of 500 men, I now employ 500 women, and at this or that place, a worker is a worker whether man or woman. You will have to calculate rather: if you have to lose in case of war this or that number of men, but may receive this or that number of women, you must today already make all preparations for making your factory suitable for female labor. Not in your industry but in another industry I noticed the other day the following: Owing to a reorientation 90 women had been taken on. In the whole factory there was Page 31 not a single lavatory for women. This isn't the thing. This may be a small matter, simply nobody thought of it, what does it matter? There are other things where we simply have to think of the difference. You must establish separate wash rooms and other things. One cannot simply put the women into the men's wash rooms. One has to acknowlege when women come to work, there must be preparations for them.

One thing is clear, in general you cannot ask as much from a women as from a man. There are certain spheres where the opposite applies, but working in a factory is not one of them. Above all you must be clear on where you can use female labor at all, and where this would be impossible. Accordingly, you must make your arrangements in case of mobilisation. This goes without saying. And I imagine that, if things like the one mentioned before are done right, the dreaded sudden decrease of work need not occur at all, and that I won't have to wait for months for the curve to go up again. Gentlemen, I think I have opened my heart enough. As to certain details you know already from the conference with Udet. I only need to know whether you (to General Udet) wish to add anyPage 32 thing ('no') or whether everything has been discussed

Gentlemen, I have still one thing to ask. I think it goes without saying that everything which I told you with regard to the political situation and preparations for mobilisation has to remain entirely among ourselves. This goes without saying, and I need hardly add anything. I

H1224-0174

chose the participants for this address in such a way that I am entitled to trust entirely their discretion. I should not like to experience the same disappointment which I had when I invited the German industry to the Herrenhaus, when the contents of my speech were already known in a wider circle the same evening.

Later on I shall confer with some gentlemen in order to receive from them some information on certain things. The air tents industry is informed. The same applies in general to the airplane motor industry. Here the main task will be to produce Mercedes "GOIs" in large numbers. As to BMW I put great hopes on the future air..... as an enormous step forward. Until then the most intensified production of the present type has to be continued of course. Jumo 211 also has to be produced with the great intensity. Moreover I hope that the motor industry too will not rest content with the fact that they have produced a good motor, but I ask them to prepare and further new developments.

Page 33 Gentlemen, here again I should like to give some advice. In our branch, in aviation and production for the needs of an air force, you cannot attain much without some imagination. This is the sphere where many new developments and inventions can be expected to appear and where one has to reorientate oneself without end. I ask you not to shrink from new thoughts and not to say: but this is impossible! Rather you ought to travel into thin air over and over again, and tell yourselves: here it is, where there must be room for imagination, where my ideas must go on a long voyage. I hope, this is my private wish and dream, a miracle will happen. I still hope that I am shown some day a motor or a weapon or a plane or a bomb, the qualities of which will be fantastic. I still hope for something which has the same importance in the struggle with the enemy as had the needle gun in the war of 1870-71. If I had such a needle gun (to use a metaphor) against an enemy who has nothing but muzzle-loaders our advantage naturally would be great. With these remarks I wish to express my sympathy with boldness in experimenting. I still am not yet in the possession of the stratosphere bomber which overcomes space at a height of 25 and 30 km. This problem has not been solved yet in the sense that practical use is possible. I still am lacking rocket motors which would enable us to effect such flying. I still am missing entirely the bomber which flies with 5 tons of explosives as far as New York and back. I should be extremely happy to have such a bomber so that I would at last be able to stop somewhat the mouth of the arrogant people over there. Thus you see, gentlemen, there is still a large field for your work, and what matters is only how high you aim, you will have success in the
Page 34 same proportion.

(Some final, unimportant remarks follow)

Admiral Lahs answers in the name of the industry.

Page 36 I want to thank you also for the remarks in which you acknowledge that we did our best. You, Field Marshal, today opened our eyes to the seriousness of the situation, and you gave us directives in those units and in that direction; and it will naturally be a matter of honor for us to march cheerfully that way. I am of the opinion that our airplane industry will be able to fulfill it without any friction provided it gets the semi-fabricated goods and there will not be too much alteration of plans.

(The remainder of this speech contains some cautious allusions to a dictatorial attitude taken by Udet, otherwise there is nothing of importance.)

H1224-0175

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. R-140

20 November 1945.

I, GOETZ MAYER, Tec 5, 33812169, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German language; and that the above is a correct and true translation of Document No. R-140.

GOETZ MAYER,
Tec 5, 33812169.

H1224-0176

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT R-148
OFFICE OF U S CHIEF OF COUNSEL

Minister President General Field Marshal
Goering
Director of the Four Year Plan
Chairman of the Cabinet Council
for the Defence of the Reich.

Berlin, 8 March 1940

V.P. 4984/2

To the Supreme Reich Authorities

Subject; Treatment of Male and Female Civilian workers of Polish Nationality in the Reich.

The mass employment of male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality in the Reich necessitates a comprehensive ruling on treatment of these workers.

The following orders are to be executed at once:

1). The Poles are to be provided with a specially marked labor permit card with photo. This card willserve also for the purposes of police registration.

The necessary orders will be issued by the Reich Labor Minister in agreement with the Reichsfuehrer-SS and Chief of the German Police at the Reich Ministry of the Interior.

2). The Poles have to wear a badge firmly attached on their clothing. Regulation will be issued by police decree of the Reich-Minister of the Interior (Reichsfuehrer-SS and Chief of the German Police).

3). Poles are not to be employed in those areas where special national political dangers, would be caused thereby.

The Reichsfuehrer-SS in his capacity as Reich Commissar for the Consolidation of the German race in agreement with the Reich Labor Minister will determine the definitions and limits of these areas.

If necessary, foreign workers of non-Polish nationality are to be employed in these areas.

4). The blameless conduct of the Poles is to be assured by special regulations. The legal and administrative regulations, necessary for this, will be issued by the Reichsfuehrer-SS and Chief of the German Police at the Reich Ministry of the Interior.

5). The orders apply to the territory of the Greater German Reich with the exception of the Eastern territories incorporated into the Reich.

6). Attention is drawn to the explanations enclosed as appendix.

signed; Goering

Seal: Minister President General Field Marshal Goering.

Director of the Four Year Plan.

Certified: Dietrich
Chancellery employee

H1224-0177

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT R-148
(cont.)

Berlin, 8 October 1940

Explanations

to the letter of Minister President General Field Marshal Goering - Director of the Four Year Plan - Chairman of the Cabinet Council for the Defence of the Reich, to the Supreme Reich Authorities dated 8 March 1940, on the subject of the Treatment of Male and Female Civilian Workers of Polish nationality in the Reich.

A comprehensive ruling on the question connected with the mass employment of male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality in the Reich is urgently required in order to meet the dangers arising from the employment of nearly a million members of nationalities which are strange to and, to a great extent hostile to, Germanism.

to 1.)

It is a stipulation for an effective combatting of these dangers, that the workers employed within the Reich are provided with sufficient personal papers. At the time of recruiting only a very superficial examination can be made; therefore it must be possible at any time to establish that Poles staying in the Reich are in possession of a labor permit and that the worker employed is the same as the person recruited. Therefore a specially marked labor permit card with photo is indispensable. As the labor permit card is an essential basis for all police inquiries a fingerprint of the bearer must be secured at the time the card is issued.

to 2.)

In addition to the labor permit card which legitimized the bearer, it is also necessary to provide all Polish workers, who enter the Reich, with an outward mark of identification.

From the very first day of his employment, there must be a guarantee that a Polish worker can be recognized as such by anybody and at any time. Only the badge serves this purpose. No defamation is intended thereby. The form of the badge will have to be in accordance with this.

to 3.)

The employment of Poles brings certain dangers with it, which are restricted to definite parts of the Reich. In the same way as Polish civilian workers are not allowed in areas of the frontier zones in the west, there are other areas in Germany, where the employment specifically of Polish workers is undesirable because of national political dangers. This applies especially to Masuria, Lausitz, and areas of the Sudetenland. The employment of Poles in these areas is impracticable, whereas there is no objection to the employment of other foreign workers (Italians, Hungarians, and Ukrainians).

to 4.)

The presence of nearly a million Poles in the Reich makes it necessary to regulate not only the employment as such, but also the conduct of the Poles by comprehensive measures, in order to counteract any behavior by the Poles which might prejudice the purposes of their employment, and to prevent any undesirable evidences in their relation to the German population. The measures necessary for this purpose are so manifold that they must be unified in a manner which will enable the dangers to be eliminated from the outset as far as possible.

The mass employment of foreign workers in Germany is so unique and novel that no binding and detailed regulations can be made for the German

H1224-0178

people, concerning this necessary life amongst foreignes.

The test to which the German people are put in the national political sense by the presence of these foreigners must be met by the inner steadfastness of the people. It is above all the task of the Party and its organizations to show up these dangers to the people by ceaseless instruction, and to make them realize the necessity of keeping distance from the Polish workers.

With regard to the Polish workers, however, regulations must be made to prevent any closer contact with the German population as far as possible. Thus Poles will have to be excluded from the cultural life of the German people, from visits to places of entertainment together with Germans and so on. These efforts must also concern the employment itself so that by employing at least an equal number of male and female Polish workers together, the Poles will be prevented from approaching German women and girls. Where this is impossible at certain places where there are concentrations of Poles, brothels with Polish girls should be established. Poles employed in towns, in commercial and industrial large agricultural concerns, should so far as possible, be accommodated together in special billets and in hutted encampments so that individual billetting should be necessary only in the case of smaller farms, according to circumstances.

The purpose of the employment, i.e. the furthering of the German economy, must not be hampered by the behavior of the Poles. The employment of Poles during the last few months has shown that unwillingness to work, open insubordination, abuse of liquor, absenteeism and other offences of all kinds are always ocurring. To remedy these abuses, the Poles must be made to understand, by restricting their liberty, that they have come to Germany for the sole purpose of working and that they have to comply with their duty to work. Appropriate measures, such as absolute compulsion to stay at the place of employment, more severe compulsory registration introduction of a curfew, restrictions on the consumption of alcohol etc., must be taken at once. If the situation develops any further Police orders alone will not suffice to prevent all abuses so that other administrative departments will have to cooperate in this matter. Even now it is evident that e.g. free use of public conveyances, such as railroads, omnibusses etc., is an inducement to the Poles to leave their places of work without permission and to roam about uncontrolled in the Reich and it urgently needs to be stopped.

The official authorities must make the Poles thoroughly acquainted with the orders on this matter. Whenever the Poles still offend against the orders, either by neglecting their duty to work or by insufferable behavior towards the German population, the appropriate steps including suitable measures, if necessary, even the most severe State Police measures, are to be taken at once, in order to nip dangers in the bud. As a rule, the measures are to be devised that Poles are withdrawn from work only where necessary. Compulsory transfer to their homes will therefore hardly be permissible.

H1224-0179

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT R-148
(cont.)

The Reichsfuehrer SS
and Chief of the German Police
at the Reich Ministry of the Interior

Berlin, 8 March 1940

IV D 2 - 382/40

To

the Fuehrer's Deputy

Munich,
Brown House

Subject: Employment in the Reich of Male and Female Civilian Workers of Polish nationality.

Appendices: 3

With reference to the letter from the Minister President General Field-Marshal Goering to the Supreme Reich Authorities on the subject of the treatment of male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality, I enclose as an appendix a copy of the Police Order of 8 March 1940 concerning distinguishing marks for these Poles, a copy of my decree dated 8 March 1940 and a copy of my letter to the Reich Labor Minister, dated 8 March 1940.

I should be grateful if, during the work of instruction undertaken from there, the points of view contained in the Leaflet for employers could be stressed and spread abroad particularly among the rural population.

Furthermore, I may mention that I have given further directions to the State Police (district) offices to prevent the failure of the employment scheme and undesirable evidences of the relations of the male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality to the German population.

Among other things, I have ordered the immediate arrest of German nationals who have sexual intercourse with male or female workers of Polish nationality, commit other improprieties, or carry on love-affairs. I do not wish this measure to prevent the effects of the justified indignation of the German population over such shameful behavior. On the contrary, I consider the deterrent effect of public defamations to be exceptionally great and I have no objection, if, for instance, German women have their heads shorn perhaps in the presence of the female youth of the village, because of their disgraceful behavior, or if they are led through the village with a label indicating their offence. The defamations should however keep to about these limits, and should not go further and result in injuries to the persons involved. Above all, they should take place before the arrest, because, once the arrested perso ns have been siezed and police cannot set them free again.

I should be grateful if these view points were brought to the notice of the Party functionaries for their personal information only and in order to ensure a uniform policy; it must be pointed out that measures of this kind cannot be carried out smoothly, unless there is close cooperation with the competent State Police (district) office. I have given instructions to the State Police (district) offices, to get in touch immediately with the competent local Party functionaries.

Signed: H. Himmler

Seal: The Reichsfuehrer SS and Chief of the German Police at the Reich Ministry for the Interior.

Certified
Kerl
Chancellery employee

H1224-0180

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT R-148
(cont.)

The Reich Minister of the Interior — Berlin, 8 March 1940

S Pol. IV D 2 - 382/40

Police Decree
Concerning the Marking of Male and
Female Civilian Workers of Polish nationality
employed in the Reich.
dated 8 March 1940

In pursuance of the Decree concerning the Police decrees of the Reich Minister, dated 14 November 1938 (Reich Gazette I p. 1582) the following is ordered:

1.

(1) Male and Female workers of Polish nationality who are or are to be employed in civil work within the Reich, have to wear a badge on the right breast of each garment, firmly attached to the garment they are wearing. This badge must be worn visibly at all times.

(2) The badge consists of a square, with sides 5 cm long, standing on one corner. It shows a purple colored P, $2\frac{1}{2}$ cm high, on a yellow ground with a purple colored border, $\frac{1}{2}$ cm wide.

2.

(1) Whoever offends against the regulation in section 1, whether intentionally or by negligence, is to be punished by a fine of not more the 150 - RM. or imprisonment for not longer than 6 weeks.

(2) Penal regulations providing a more severe punishment and police security measures remain unaffected.

3.

The Reichsfuehrer SS and Chief of the German Police at the Reich Ministry of the Interior will issue the legal and administrative regulations required for the execution and carrying out of this police decree.

4.

This decree applies to the territory of the Greater German Reich with the exception of the Eastern territories incorporated into the Reich.

5.

This decree comes into force 3 weeks after its publication.

for and on behalf of:

signed: H. Himmler

Seal: The Reichsfuehrer SS and Chief of the German Police in the Reich Ministry for the Interior.

Certified, signed Kerl

Chancellery employee

H1224-0181

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT R-148
(cont.)

The Reichsfuehrer SS and
Chief of the German Police
at the Reich Ministry of
the Interior.

Berlin, 8 March 1940

IV D 2 - 382/40

Express Letter

To the Reich Labor Minister

Berlin, SW 11
Saarland Str. 96

Subject: Treatment of Male and Female Civilian Workers of Polish nationality Employed in the Reich.

Appendices: 2

(Page 1 and 2 up to the last paragraph contain administrative provisions with regard to the registration of Polish workers and the issue of labor permit cards)

Last Paragraph:

"In order to prevent untoward events which have occured again and again, especially with regard to the behavior of Polish workers towards German women and girls, I request, as has already been expressed in the explanations accompanying the letter of Minister President, General Field-Marshal Goering, that, as far as possible, equal numbers of female Polish workers be employed in the same place as male Polish workers, especially in agricultural districts.

I request that the Chief of the Security Police, and the SD, be informed of the places where mainly or exclusively male workers only can be employed in large numbers, - this will be the case especially in industrial places. He will, thus be able to prevent the dangers as far as possible, by establishing brothels with Polish girls. I therefore request that, in these cases, brothel hutments be set up simultaneously with the billets for male workers.

It is essential for the separation of the male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality from the German population, that they are housed together in billets. This will not always be possible in the case of agricultural employment, but it usually can be done in towns and in large industrial, commercial, and agricultural enterprises. Special importance may be laid on providing separate rest rooms for the work breaks. This could be made a duty of the factory when the requirement of labor is submitted.

(The next paragraph dealing with medical supervision of Polish workers is irrelevant. So is the last one, dealing with the distribution of instructions for employers.)

"I should be grateful if I could have an opinion on the questions raised as soon as possible."

signed: H. Himmler

Seal: The Reichsfuehrer SS and Chief of the German Police at the Reich Ministry of the Interior.

Certified
signed: Kerl
Chancellery employee

H1224-0182

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT R-148
(cont.)

The Reichsfuehrer SS and
Chief of the German Police
at the Reich-Ministry of
the Interior.

Berlin, 8 March 1940

S IV D 2 - 382/40

Express Letter

To

The Reich Commissar for the Saar District,
The Reich Governors (Statthalter) of Austria (Ostmark),
The Provincial Governments (Provincial captains) - Ministry of the Interior,
The Government Presidents in Prussia, Saxony, Bavaria, Sudenten-Gau,
The President of the Police in Berlin,

For information:

To The Reich Commissars for Defense,
The Reich Governors,
The Lord Lieutenants in Prussia.

Subject: Treatment of Male and Female Civilian Workers of Polish nationality employed in the Reich.

Appendices: 7

(Introduction and No. 1 and 2, dealing with formalities, the issue of labor permit cards, police registration, the taking of photos of Polish workers, on pages 1, 2, 3 and part of 4 irrelevant.)

"3) The local police authorities are to bring the appended list (in two languages) of duties (Form I) during their stay in the Reich to the notice of the male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality when they make their compulsory registration.

The Polish workers must be informed of the list of duties by having it read out to them or given to them. Poles who can read and write may be used for this purpose. Form I may in no case be handed out either to Poles or the German employers."

(The following paragraph deals with a remark regarding the above - not relevant.)

"Application for form I may be made to the Reich Security Main Office."

4) deals with Form II for employers.

"5) A curfew for male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality, is to be instituted, for the period from April 1st to September 30th from the hours of 2100 - 0500, for the period from October 1st to March 31st from the hours of 2000 - 0600, insofar as employment does not necessitate the fixing of other specific times.

6) Civilian male and female workers of Polish nationality must obtain the written consent of the competent local Police Authorities before they can use public conveyances.

The consent should be withheld unless the Labor Office certifies that use of public conveyances is necessitated by their employment.

The use of merely local public conveyances is allowed without consent.

I have asked the Reich Minister for Transport also to issue orders from his sphere of office, that tickets should be issued to male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality only if the written consent of the local police authorities is produced. Corresponding measures must also be taken in the facilities for public travel in the district concerned.

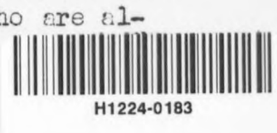
7) Male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality must not be permitted to visit German cultural, church or social functions. I have asked the Reich Minister for Church Affairs, to issue the orders necessary for the spiritual welfare of the male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality, - above all for the holding of special church services.

8) Male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality must not be permitted to visit inns. However, according to the local conditions, one or several inns of a simple type may be opened to them at certain hours. No inn-keeper is to be compelled against his will, to open his inn to male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality. So far as possible, use for this purpose should be made of canteens of industrial concerns etc. in which workers of Polish nationality are employed.

During the times fixed, no German may enter inns where Poles may go.

9) It must be made the duty of employers, to whom male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality have been sent, to report to the local police authorities immediately on any cases they become aware of where these workers fail to comply with the orders applying to them or leave their place of employment without permission."

(The following paragraphs, dealing with police raids for the control and in the interests of German employers, and with Poles who are already in the Reich, are irrelevant.)



The last paragraph on page 6 reads:

"The higher administrative authorities are to issue the police decrees necessary for the execution of the measures ordered in Nos. 5 - 9. In order that the Poles may continue working, the payment of a compulsory sum or the fine laid down by the terms of provincial law, should be decided and/or imposed should they offend. Arrest and/or imprisonment may be decided and/or imposed on employers failing to comply with the orders issued in accordance with No. 9. Any male or female workers of Polish nationality with repeatedly or severely violate the orders issued, so that the imposition of a fine does not seem adequate, are to be reported to the competent State Police-district-office and, if necessary, arrested at once. The State Police-district-offices have been given further instructions for combatting unwillingness to work and strikes and also the immoral behavior of workers of Polish nationality.

In order to obtain compliance with the orders, very severe action should be taken during the first eight weeks, In every district therefore, any cases which occur are to be reported at once to the competent State-Police-district-offices who will take measures as an example."

The next paragraphs, dealing with the duties of the labor offices, and medical supervision, are irrelevant. So is the last paragraph making proposals, should the situation require further orders.

signed: H. Himmler

Seal: The Reichsfuehrer SS and Chief of the German Police at the Reich Ministry of the Interior,

Certified: illegible
Chancellery employee

Attached are several forms:

a). "Labor card of Polish workers from the General Government of Poland and Certificate about wage savings paid in ", providing space for prints of the left and right digit, name, Christian name and photo.

b). Personal card, for personal details and finger-prints, and photo

c). Card for details of the residence of the worker

d). "Residence form for Workers of Polish nationality" providing for details of residence, registrations and labor card Nos. etc.

H1224-0184

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT R-148
(cont.)

H1224-0185

The Reichsfuehrer SS
and Chief of the German
Police at the Reich Ministry
of the Interior.

Berlin, 8 March 1940

IV D 2 - 382/40

Express Letter

to all State Police district-offices and State Police offices
(with the exception of those of the Eastern Territories
incorporated into the Reich).

For Information to

Departments I, II, III, V, and VI, of the Reich Security
Main Office,
the Superior SS - and Police officers,
the Inspectors of the Security Police and the SD,
the Commanders of the Security Police and the SD,
the State Police district-offices and State Police offices
of the Eastern Territories incorporated into the
Reich.

Subject: Treatment of male and female civilian workers of
Polish nationality employed in the Reich.

Appendices: 6

(The first and part of the second paragraph, giving an introduction and enumerating the documents mentioned in this translation are irrelevant.)

It continues: (page 2 line 8)
"the measures ordered together with the instruction of the foreign workers, will not however suffice to meet, in the necessary way, the dangers, which threaten as a result of the employment in Germany of nearly a million members of a nation which is foreign and to a great extent hostile to the German people. It is therefore mainly the duty of the Secret State Police to combat these dangers with all means at their disposal.

For this purpose the following principles are to be followed:

1). Combatting insubordination and unwillingness to work on the part of male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality.

The insubordinate behavior of the Polish workers, which has been observed up till now, leads to the conclusion, that the orders given in the appended decree are frequently not complied with and that the fines to be imposed under them will not have a sufficiently deterrent effect. In every case where the type of the offence or the frequency of ommission shows, that the offender is of an insubordinate attitude of mind, the State Police must intervene in order to guarantee the authority of official orders, For this reason I have ordered in the appended decree that such cases are to be reported to the State Police (district) offices.

It is mainly the work of the Secret State Police, to deal with cases where the success of employment is prejudiced by constant decrease in work done, strikes, incitement of the workers, absenteeism, acts of sabotage etc. It is important for this purpose by every available method to bring the male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality round to complying with their duty to work.

The steps to be taken to combat insubordination and non-compliance with the duty to work, must be decided according th the severity of the case and to the spirit of resistance of the offender. It is of most importance that they be taken immediately after the offence is committed so

that they have a decisive effect. In accordance with my instructions in the appended decree, especially severe measures must be taken during the first eight weeks, in order to bring home to the workers of Polish nationality from the outset the consequences of non-compliance with the orders issued. In every district therefore, in a few cases of disobedience and unwillingness to work, the workers of Polish nationality concerned are to be transferred to Labor Training Camps for several years. In order to increase the deterrent effect of these measures, they are to be announced verbally to the workers of Polish nationality by an official of the Secret State Police or of the local competent police office (e.g. gendarmerie posts) with the aid of an interpreter, especially in the factories or (agricultural) places where the punished Poles were employed.

In general, all cases where a warning, by the State Police or a short imprisonment is not sufficient to induce the worker to fulfil his duties, application is to be made for his transfer to a labor training camp, and an opinion given on what treatment he should receive there. The treatment in the Labor training camps will have to be in accordance with the severity of the offence. It is suitable e. g. to make obstinate shirkers work in the stone-quarries of the Mauthausen camp. By a special decree, to the heads of SS-Deathshead Units and concentration camps, I have ordered that the treatment of these persons under protective custody be undertaken in a concentration camp.

Extraordinarily serious cases have to be reported to the Chief of the Security Police and the SD who, after examination, make the decision on a special treatment of the workers of Polish nationality in question.

2). <u>Combatting an undesirable behavior of male and female workers of Polish nationality towards the German population.</u>

The measures to be taken in accordance with section 1. must be applied in such a way as to stop the unbearable behavior of workers of Polish nationality towards the German population.

This is especially applicable in cases of sexual offences. Male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality who have intercourse with Germans, or are guilty of any other immoral behavior are to be arrested at once and are to be reported by teleprinter to the Chief of the Security Police and the SD to be put under his own Special Treatment.

Germans, who have intercourse, behave immorally in other ways or have love affairs with male or female civilian workers of Polish nationality are to be arrested at once. A proposal for their transfer to a concentration camp is to be made. The arrest, however, should not make a suitable defamation of these persons by the population impossible. To this extent, I refer to my enclosed letter to the Fuehrer's Deputy and request that the local Party functionaries be contacted immediately in the matter and constant cooperation assured. The transfer of Germans into a concentration camp is to be announced in a short press notice whose form is determined by the Reich Security Main Office; the name is to be given.

3). <u>Combatting activities of the male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality which are detrimental to the Reich.</u>

General statements and activities by these workers of Polish nationality which are detrimental to the Reich, are to be dealt with in the appropriate way as in No. 1.

(The following paragraph deals with censorship of mail, here irrelevant.)

H1224-0186

"4). Searching for male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality who have escaped."

(irrelevant)

"5). Measures with regard to the German Population.

The employment in the Reich of great numbers of male and female workers of Polish Nationality necessitates measures being taken also against those Germans who, behave towards these foreign workers in a manner prejudicial to the honor and dignity of the German people.

Those Germans who hinder the Poles from the duty of fulfilling their duties at work, and hamper the prevention of an unpleasant behavior towards the German population, e.g. by visiting inns and billets reserved for Poles, or by buying tickets, posting letters, collecting money and clothing for them etc. are to be imprisoned for a short time, if urgent warnings are not sufficient. In more serious cases however, a proposal for a longer term of protective custody or transfer to a concentration camp, may seem required.

A special eye in this respect must be kept on the churches, which may - as in the case of Polish prisoners-of-war - try to see to the spiritual care of the Polish workers of both sexes together with the German population. I refer to my letter to the Reich Minister for Church Affairs.

6). Continual reports are to be sent on the results of the orders made to ensure blameless conduct of the Poles, and of the State Police measures in accordance with these.

The decree is not suitable to be forwarded to the district - (Kreise) and the local police authorities.

(signed) H. Himmler

Seal: The Reichsfuehrer SS and Chief of the German Police at the Reich Ministry of the Interior.

Certified:

Kerl

Chancellery employee

H1224-0187

Instructive Leaflet

for German Employers with Regard to the Employment and Treatment of Civilian Workers of Polish nationality from the General Government.

The demands upon the German war time economy require the employment of all available workers. The German Government has, for this reason engaged large numbers of male and female workers of Polish nationality for employment in the Reich.

A.

General behavior towards Polish Civilian Workers.

Every German employer must always bear in mind that the civilian workers of Polish nationality employed by him are members of an enemy State, and he must act accordingly. All social contact between these civilian workers and Germans is forbidden. Every employer must see that the restrictions imposed on these workers are strictly complied with. These restrictions include compulsory registration within 24 hours after arrival at the place of employment, prohibition of visits to theatres, movies, inns etc. with the German population, the obligation to wear a badge attached to the outer clothing on the right breast, where it is visible, and curfew for certain hours of the night.

Germans who prejudice the success of these measures e.g. by collecting money and clothing for the Poles, who post letters or buy tickets, who visit inns, which are open to Poles, during their presence etc., will be called to account. Sexual intercourse between Germans and Polish civilian workers of both sexes will be punished most severely.

Every employer must report any offences of these workers against the orders applicable and any other undesirable conduct to the local police authorities as soon as they come to his knowledge.

The employer must see to it that his German employees restrict their contacts with Polish workers to what is strictly necessary, and avoid any contact whatsoever with them outside work.

B.

Billetting of Polish civilian workers."

(This paragraph orders the separation of Polish workers in separate billets or rooms, even for meals, Detail irrelevant.)

"D.

Pay

The pay of Polish agricultural workers is on principle lower than that of German workers. The "Reich Tariff Regulations for Agricultural Workers, who are not German Citizens, with the exception of those whose Labor Conditions form the Object of Treaties", issued 8 January 1940 (Reich Labor Gazette No. 2 dated 15th January 1940) are applicable. Existing Labor contracts providing for higher pay as fixed by the Reich Tariff regulations may be reduced at 4 weeks notice, in accordance with an order dated 8 January 1940 issued by the Reich Trustee for Labor for the economic district of Brandenburg in his capacity as special trustee, to the schedules of the Reich Tariff Regulations. Civil Law suits arising from the labor contracts of Polish farm-workers are to be decided by courts of arbitration set up at the appropriate labor offices, excluding the ordinary jurisdiction of the labor courts.

H1224-0188

H1224-0189

The working conditions for industrial Polish labor are equal to those of German labor unless special provisions are being issued. The Reich Ministry for Labor has published a leaflet giving information regarding the actual payment of wages to Polish civilian workers and regarding the remittance of their savings to their home country.

E.

Social Insurance"

(This chapter dealing with health-and personal accident-insurance, invalidity insurance, unemployment insurance is here irrelevant.)

Duties of Male and Female Civilian Workers of Polish Nationality during their stay in the Reich

The Greater German Reich provides each and every worker of Polish nationality with work, bread, and pay. It demands in return that everyone carries out conscientiously the work allotted to him and that everyone complies carefully with the laws and orders in force.

The following special regulations apply to Polish male and female workers:

1). It is strictly forbidden to leave the place of residence.

2). It is also forbidden to leave the billets during the time of curfew ordered by the police.

3). Public conveyances, such as railroads, may be used only after special consent has been obtained from the local police authority.

4). Every Polish male and female worker must always wear visibly the badge issued to him or her, They should be worn on the right breast of every piece of clothing. The badge is to be sewn onto the clothing.

5). Whoever shirks his work, strikes, incites other workers, arbitrarily absents himself from the place of employment, etc., will be transferred to a concentration camp for forced labor.

Sabotage and other serious offences against work-discipline will be punished severely, at least by transfer to a labor training camp for several years.

6). All social contact with the German people is forbidden; especially visits to theatres, movies, dances, inns and churches, in company with Germans. Dancing and drinking is allowed in only inns especially allocated to Polish workers.

7). Whoever has sexual intercourse with a German man or woman, or whoever approaches them in any other improper manner, will be punished by death.

8). Every offence against the orders and regulations issued for civilian workers of Polish nationality will be punished in Germany. Nobody will be sent back to Poland.

9). Every Polish male and every Polish female worker must always bear in mind, that they came to work in Germany of their own free will. Whoever works satisfactorily, obtains bread and pay. Whoever shirks his work or disregards the regulations issued, will be taken to account severely, especially during war time.

Document 9a is a repetition of the foregoing in Polish.

H1224-0190

H1224-0191

PARTIAL TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT R-148
(cont.)

The Reichsfuehrer SS
and Chief of the German Police
at the Reich Ministry
of the Interior

Berlin, 8 March 1940

IV D 2 - 382/40

To the Reich Minister for Church Affairs

Berlin, W 8
Leipziger Strasse 3

Subject: Spiritual welfare of Male and Female Civilian Workers of Polish Nationality employed in the Reich.

Appendices: 2

The employment of great numbers of male and female workers of Polish nationality in the Reich has necessitated a comprehensive ruling on the treatment of these workers. The basis for this regulation is the letter of the Minister President, General Field-Marshal Goering of 8th March, addressed to the Supreme Reich Authorities. In the sphere of police matters the orders given in the appended Police decree of 8 March 1940 and the decree, also appended dated 8th March 1940, have been issued.

Undesirable evidences in the relations of the male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality to the German people are to be prevented. Therefore it should be avoided as far as possible that these workers have any contact whatsoever with the German population, unless it has a direct connection with the employment itself. For this reason I have issued an order to the effect that Poles are prohibited from visiting church functions of the German people, and especially from attending services.

The churches and their various representatives may now be expected in the same way (as they did in the case of Polish prisoners of war), to take an interest in male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality, to hold services for them together with the German population, to collect money and gifts in kind for them, and to try to establish similar connections between the German population and these workers.

For this reason I ask you to take/pre-cautions that the civilian male and female workers are excluded from the general church services for Germans. Spiritual care of them should be undertaken by way of special church services, open only to them. No sermons should be preached and no use should be made of the Polish language. Any church welfare of these workers should be undertaken separately from the German population.

I deem it necessary further to make it clear to the churches that they may have no dealings whatsoever with the male and female civilian workers of Polish nationality except in purely spiritual welfare.

I have made appropriate State Polish measures to deal with any conduct of the clergy which is contrary to these principles.

I should be grateful if the Reich Security Main Office could be informed of any measures to be taken on your part.

signed: H. Himmler

Seal: The Reichsfuehrer SS and Chief of the German Police in the Reich Ministry for the Interior.

Certified:
signed Kerl
Chancellery employee

H1224-0192

CERTIFICATE OF TRANSLATION
OF DOCUMENT NO. R-148

19 November 1945

I, CLARE BOULTER, P/O, W.R.N.S., 59549, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document No. R-148.

CLARE BOULTER
P/O, W.R.N.S.
59549

H1224-0193

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT TC-27
OFFICE OF J S CHILF OF COUNSEL

Ich, SIR DAVID JOHN MONTAGUDOUGLAS-SCOTT, D.C.M.G., Stellvertreter des Unterstaatssekretaers des Auswaertigen, BESTAETIGE HIERMIT, dass die anliegende Urkunde, mit Erkennungsnummer "T.C.27", den VOLLSTAENDIGEN INHALT einer diplomatischen Note von 12. Maerz 1938 enthaelt, die von tschechischen Staatssekretaer in London an den Hauptstaatssekretaer des Auswaertigen Seiner Majestaet gerichtet ist.

gez. David Scott

Auslandsamt, London, S.W.I, den 25. Oktober, 1945.

DEUTSCHE ZUSICHERUNG AN DIE TSCHECHOSLOVAKEI, DEN 11. MAERZ, 1938.

(R 2524/162/12) Nr. 76

M. MASARYK AN DEN VICOMTE HALIFAX.-
(Am 12. Maerz erhalten)

London, den 12. Maerz 1938

Gnaediger Herr,

ICH HAVE meiner Regierung ueber die Unterredung, die Sie so freundlich waren mit mir heute zu haben, Bericht erstattet.

Ich wurde demzufolge von meiner Regierung angewiesen, die folgenden Tatsachen der Koeniglichen Regierung offiziell bekanntzumachen: Gestern Abend (den 11. Maerz) machte FELDMARSCHALL GOERING vor M. MASTNY, dem tschechischen Staatssekretaer in Berlin, zwei getrennte Angaben. Er versicherte ihm, dass die Ereignisse in Oesterreich in keiner Weise einen nachteiligen Einfluss auf die Beziehungen zwischen dem Deutschen Reich und der Tschechoslovakei ausueben werden, und betonte die andauernden, ernstlichen Bemuehungen von Seiten Deutschlands diese gegenseitigen Beziehungen zu foerdern.

In der ersteren Angabe verwendete der Feldmarschall den Ausdruck: "Ich gebe Ihnen mein Ehrenwort."

In der zweiten behauptete FELDMARSCHALL GOERING dass, nachdem er schon sein eigenes Wort gegeben habe, er nun das Wort des Staatsoberhauptes, der ihn bevollmaechtigt habe, sein Amt vorlaeufig zu uebernehmen, geben koenne. Er wiederholte dann die vorliegenden Versicherungen.

Heute (den 12. Maerz) lud FELDMARSCHALL GOERING M. MASTNY ein bei ihm vorzusprechen, wiederholte die gestrigen Versicherungen und fuegte hinzu, dass die nach Oesterreich marschierenden deutschen Truppen ausdrueecklichen Befehl haetten, sich mindestens 15 km von der tschechischen Grenze entfernt zu halten; zur gleichen Zeit drueckte er die Hoffnung aus, dass keine Mobilisierung der tschechischen Armee stattfinden wuerde.

Es war M. MASTNY moeglich ihm in dieser Beziehung bestimmte und bindende Versicherungen abzugeben, und heute sprach er mit BARON VON NEURATH, der ihm unter anderem HERRN HITLERS Versicherung, dass Deutschland sich weiter an den in Locarno im Oktober 1925 geschlossenen Schiedsvertrag zwischen Deutschland und der Tschechoslovakei gebunden halten wuerde, uebermittelte.

M. MASTNY sah heute auch HERRN VON MACKENSEN, der ihm versicherte, dass die Klaerung der oesterreichischen Lage dazu beitragen wuerde, die Beziehungen zwischen Deutschland und der Tschechoslovakei zu verbessern.

H1224-0194

TRANSLATION OF DOCUMENT TC-27
OFFICE OF U S CHIEF OF COUNSEL
(cont.)

Die Regierung der Republik der Tschechoslovakei wuenscht der koeniglichen Regierung zu versichern, dass sie von dem ernsthaften und brennenden Verlangen erfuellt ist, mit dem deutschen Reich moeglichst die besten nachbarlichen Beziehungen aufrecht zu erhalten. Sie kann aber nicht die Ereignisfolge in Oesterreich, waehrend der Zeit vom Gegenseitigkeits-Vertrag zwischen Deutschland und Oesterreich (11. Juli, 1936) bis zum gestrigen Tage (11. Maerz, 1938), ohne grosse Besorgnis betrachten.

Ich habe u.s.w.

JAN MASARYK

I, WALTER R. SELIGSON, 1st Lt. 01558904, hereby certify that I am thoroughly conversant with the English and German languages; and that the above is a true and correct translation of Document TC-27.

WALTER R. SELIGSON
1st Lt.
01558904